

WIND RIVER

VxWorks®

BSP DEVELOPER'S GUIDE

6.6

Copyright © 2007 Wind River Systems, Inc.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Wind River Systems, Inc.

Wind River, Tornado, and VxWorks are registered trademarks of Wind River Systems, Inc. The Wind River logo is a trademark of Wind River Systems, Inc. Any third-party trademarks referenced are the property of their respective owners. For further information regarding Wind River trademarks, please see:

<http://www.windriver.com/company/terms/trademark.html>

This product may include software licensed to Wind River by third parties. Relevant notices (if any) are provided in your product installation at the following location:

installDir\product_name\3rd_party_licensor_notice.pdf.

Wind River may refer to third-party documentation by listing publications or providing links to third-party Web sites for informational purposes. Wind River accepts no responsibility for the information provided in such third-party documentation.

Corporate Headquarters

Wind River Systems, Inc.
500 Wind River Way
Alameda, CA 94501-1153
U.S.A.

toll free (U.S.): (800) 545-WIND
telephone: (510) 748-4100
facsimile: (510) 749-2010

For additional contact information, please visit the Wind River URL:

<http://www.windriver.com>

For information on how to contact Customer Support, please visit the following URL:

<http://www.windriver.com/support>

Contents

1	Introduction	1
1.1	About This Document	1
1.2	The Board Support Package	2
1.3	The BSP Development Process	3
1.4	Terminology	4
2	Overview of a BSP	7
2.1	Introduction	7
2.2	Boot Sequence	10
2.2.1	Sequence Overview	10
2.2.2	Boot Sequence Configurations	12
2.2.3	Architecture Considerations	16
2.2.4	Detailed Boot Sequence	17
2.3	Components of a BSP	22

2.3.1	Source and Include Files	23
	README	24
	Makefile	25
	config.h	25
	bspname.h	25
	sysALib.s	26
	romInit.s	26
	sysLib.c	27
	target.ref or target.nr	28
	board.jpg	28
	sysDev.c	28
	configAll.h	29
	bootInit.c	30
	usrConfig.c	30
2.3.2	Derived Files	30
2.3.3	Required Data Variables	31
	sysPhysMemDesc[]	32
	sysPhysMemDescNumEnt	33
	sysBootLine	33
	sysExcMsg	34
	sysFlags	34
	hcfDeviceList[]	34
	hcfDeviceNum	34
	devUnitCfgData[]	34
2.3.4	Required Routines	35
	sysBspRev()	36
	Timer Driver Routines	36
	sysMemTop()	37
	sysPhysMemTop()	38
	sysModel()	38
	NVRAM Routines	39
	Hardware Initialization Routines	39
	sysSerialChanGet()	40
	sysToMonitor()	40
2.3.5	Required Macros	42
2.3.6	Optional Routines	45
2.3.7	Hardware Considerations	45

2.4	The Development Environment	46
2.4.1	BSP Debugging Methods	47
	Primitive Tools	47
	Native Debug ROMs	48
	ROM Emulator	48
	On-Chip Debugging (OCD) Devices	48
	Logic Analyzer	49
	In-Circuit Emulator	49
2.4.2	WDB Debugging Interface	50
2.4.3	Workbench Libraries and Tools	51
2.4.4	Compiler and Tool Choice	51
2.4.5	Download Path	52
2.5	Common Problems	53
2.5.1	Failing to Include LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS	53
2.5.2	Providing Too Much Device Initialization in romInit.s	54
2.5.3	Providing Insufficient Initialization in sysALib.s	54
2.5.4	Locating Modified Drivers in the Wrong Directory	55
2.5.5	Including Confusing Configuration Options	55
2.5.6	Using Non-Maskable Interrupts	56
3	Porting a BSP to Custom Hardware	59
3.1	Introduction	59
3.2	Getting a Default Kernel Running	60
3.2.1	Initializing the Board	60
3.2.2	Initializing Memory	61
3.2.3	Using Debug Routines in the Initialization Code	61
3.2.4	VxBus Initialization Sequence	64

3.2.5	Debugging the Initialization Code	65
	Initializing ROM-Based Image Types	66
	Creating Additional Diagnostic Routines	67
	Copying Additional Code From the Reference BSP	68
	Initializing RAM-Based Image Types	69
	Initializing All Image Types	69
3.2.6	Starting the WDB Agent Before the Kernel	72
3.2.7	Building and Downloading VxWorks	74
3.2.8	Interrupt Controllers	75
3.2.9	DMA	75
3.2.10	Minimum Required Drivers	75
3.2.11	Serial Drivers	76
3.2.12	VxBus Initialization Routines	77
3.3	Finalizing Your BSP	78
3.3.1	Removing Development-Related Changes	79
3.3.2	Creating Workbench Projects	79
3.3.3	Adding Other Timers	79
3.3.4	Enabling NVRAM	80
3.3.5	Enabling Cache and MMU Devices	81
3.3.6	Testing Boot ROMs	83
3.3.7	Providing Bus Interface Support	84
	VxBus Support	84
	Legacy Bus Interface Support	84
	PCI Bus Interface Support	85
	PCI Configuration Example	96
	PCI Show Routines	102
	VME Bus Interface Support	104
	USB Bus Interface Support	105
3.3.8	Updating BSP-Specific Documentation	105
3.3.9	Providing Additional Optional Device Support	106
	Adding VxBus Devices	106
	Adding Ethernet Devices	107
	Adding Other Devices	109

3.3.10	Writing Generic Drivers	110
	Multi-Mode Serial (SIO) Drivers	111
	Serial Drivers	114
	Timer	115
	Power Management	115
	Non-Volatile Memory	118
	RAM Availability	119
	Multifunction Devices	120
	SCSI-2 Devices	120
3.3.11	Troubleshooting and Debugging	121
	SCSI Cables and Termination	121
	Data Coherency Problems	121
	Data Address in Virtual Memory Environments	121
3.3.12	Modifying a BSP to Support Kernel Scalability	122
	Polling Mode Serial	122
	Module Dependencies	123
	The BSP CDF	125
	Using Reference BSPs	126
4	Debugging Your BSP	127
4.1	Introduction	127
4.2	Applying Basic Debugging Techniques	128
4.2.1	Using LEDs as a Diagnostic Tool	129
4.2.2	Verifying the Image Location	129
	Finding Addresses in the Image File	129
	Finding Addresses in the Flash image	130
	Finding Addresses in RAM	133
4.2.3	Verifying RAM	134
4.2.4	Verifying the Image and OS Configuration	135
	Post-Processed Compiler Output	135
	Operating System Components Built Into the Image	136
4.3	Applying Advanced Debugging Techniques	138
4.3.1	Symbols	138

4.3.2	Breakpoints	138
	Types of Breakpoints	139
	The Boot Procedure as It Relates to OCD	139
	Initial Breakpoints in Flash Images	140
	Initial Breakpoints in Downloaded Images	140
A	Resolving Common Development Issues	143
A.1	Introduction	143
A.2	The Development Environment	144
A.2.1	Image Locations	144
A.2.2	Position-Independent Code	145
A.3	Exception Handling and Debug Tools	145
A.4	Cache and MMU	146
A.4.1	Register Access	146
A.4.2	Timing Issues	147
A.5	Non-portable Code	147
A.6	Volatile Variables	147
A.7	Conflicts Between Virtual and Physical Memory	148
B	Implementing Documentation Guidelines	149
B.1	Introduction	150
B.2	Written Style	150
	Sentences	150
	Punctuation	151
	Word Usage	151
	Spelling	151
	Acronyms	156
	Board Names	158

B.3	Sections for Libraries and Subroutines	158
	NAME Section	159
	ROUTINES Section	160
	SYNOPSIS Section	160
	DESCRIPTION Section	161
	INCLUDE FILES Section	163
	RETURNS Section	164
	ERRNO or ERRORS Section	165
	SEE ALSO Section	165
B.4	Sections for target.ref	166
	NAME Section	167
	INTRODUCTION Section	167
	FEATURES Section	167
	HARDWARE DETAILS Section	167
	SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS Section	168
	BOARD LAYOUT Section	168
	SEE ALSO Section	168
	BIBLIOGRAPHY Section	169
B.5	Format and Style	169
	Punctuation and Spelling	172
	Headings	172
	Special Words	173
	Lists and Tables	176
	Code Examples, Syntax Displays, and Diagrams	179
B.6	Directives	181
	Blocking Text from Publication	182
	Other Overrides	183
	Image Files	184
B.7	Converting target.nr Files	184
B.8	Generating Reference Entries	185
	Files	185
	Tools	186
	Processing	187

C	BSP Validation Test Suite	189
C.1	Introduction	189
C.2	Test Framework Overview	190
C.2.1	Directory Structure	190
C.2.2	Test Files and Scripts	190
C.3	Validating Your BSP	199
C.3.1	Set Your Host Environment	200
C.3.2	Run the BSP VTS	201
C.3.3	Troubleshooting the Test Framework	205
	Index	207

1

Introduction

- 1.1 [About This Document](#) 1
- 1.2 [The Board Support Package](#) 2
- 1.3 [The BSP Development Process](#) 3
- 1.4 [Terminology](#) 4

1.1 About This Document

This document describes, in general terms, the elements that make up a board support package (BSP), the requirements for a VxWorks BSP, and the general behavior of a BSP during the boot process. This document outlines the steps needed to port an existing BSP to a new hardware platform or to write a new VxWorks BSP for custom hardware using a reference BSP or template BSP as a starting point. It provides hints and tips for debugging a BSP and solving common BSP development problems. It also provides information on the BSP validation test suite (BSP VTS) that is used to assess the functionality of a VxWorks BSP.

The primary audience for this document is developers writing a custom BSP for a specific application platform, using an existing BSP as a starting point for development. In most cases, the document assumes that the developer has a reference BSP similar to the required new BSP. Although this document is also useful for developers writing a new BSP without a reference BSP, the document and the reference BSP are intended for use together. If you are writing a completely

new BSP, there are template files available for use in lieu of the reference BSP. However, a template BSP is generally not as complete as a reference BSP.

During BSP development, you may want to consult the following VxWorks companion document in addition to this manual:

- VxWorks Device Driver Documentation

This includes:

- *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 1: Fundamentals of Writing Device Drivers*—This document discusses the VxBus infrastructure and issues related to writing VxBus model device drivers for VxWorks. The information in this volume is relevant to all VxBus model device drivers.
 - *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 2: Writing Class-Specific Drivers*—This document discusses the customizations related to writing VxBus model device drivers for one of the supported VxBus device classes. It also includes guidelines for writing custom VxBus model device drivers.
 - *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 3: Legacy Drivers and Migration*—This document provides the necessary information for maintaining legacy model (non-VxBus) device drivers and information on migrating legacy device drivers to the VxBus device driver model. The information in this volume is relevant to all legacy model device drivers.
- *VxWorks Hardware Considerations Guide*— This document discusses issues related to embedded hardware design, with a focus on VxWorks. It provides guidelines and suggestions for selecting hardware for a VxWorks-based project.

1.2 The Board Support Package

A *board support package* (BSP) is typically composed of C and assembly source files, header files, a makefile, a **readme** file containing version numbers and high-level modification history, and a **target.ref** or **target.nr** file containing documentation specific to the BSP.

The purpose of a BSP is to configure the VxWorks kernel for the specific hardware on your target board. In addition, the BSP provides an easy way to maintain

portability across many different hardware configurations without having to customize VxWorks, the core operating system (OS). This portability is achieved by defining a boot procedure and a set of routines that are called during the boot process for configuration, and during normal operation for specific kinds of hardware access.

The BSP allows for a well-defined interface between your target hardware and the OS. During the boot process, the BSP routines must call core OS routines and device driver routines to configure a portion of the core OS as well as the device drivers. The OS and well-written device drivers then make calls to the BSP routines during system operation in order to make specific hardware requests.

Wind River provides processor-dependent software as part of each reference BSP. That is, the portions of the BSP that depend only on processor type are done for you. In addition, many hardware drivers are available for each processor type. You can often use these drivers without change or, in most other cases, you can easily modify the drivers to suit specific hardware.

1.3 The BSP Development Process

In order to create a functioning BSP, the BSP writer must pass through several stages of BSP development. Briefly, these stages include:

- configuring the development environment
- minimal hardware or hardware simulator configuration
- gaining a clear understanding of the hardware
- creating a minimal, functioning kernel
- BSP cleanup and the addition of device drivers

Configuration of the development environment includes choosing, installing, and configuring a compiler, debugger, and other tools. You must also determine what download mechanisms to use, including how to program ROM or flash devices, and which hardware debugger to use, if any.

The first step of actual development is writing software to initialize the hardware to a *quiescent* state. That is, bringing the hardware to a state where it does not generate interrupts that the processor is unable to handle early in the system initialization process. Quiescent initialization code is usually created in assembly language and is typically a short piece of code. Additional code is necessary to

reach the point where VxWorks is running. Most of this additional code is written in a higher-level language, such as C.

The amount of time required to bring a BSP to the point that VxWorks is running with just clock, serial, and Ethernet drivers varies greatly. In part, the amount of time depends on how close the reference BSP is to the target hardware, as well as the choice of development environment. It may also depend on what boot configurations are supported. If a hardware debugger, such as the Wind River ICE SX (*in-circuit emulator*), is available for debugging and flash programming, if a relatively similar reference BSP is available, and if all normal boot configurations are supported, the BSP development process can take as little as five to six weeks for an experienced developer. However, a typical development process is more likely to take several months.

Once the default kernel is running, additional drivers may be required for the intended application. In most cases, these drivers can be added at a later date, concurrent with application development.

For more information on developing and using drivers with your BSP, see the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide*.

1.4 Terminology

The following terminology is used in this document:

installDir

Within this document, file paths are typically expressed as a full path; this practice maintains consistency between this and other Wind River documentation.

bspname

In several places within this document, there are references to file names that are based on the BSP. These filenames have the string *bspname* substituted. For example, if you are working on a BSP called **acmeBSP**, change any reference *bspname* to **acmeBSP**. For example, *bspname.h* would become **acmeBSP.h**.

dev

Where this document refers to devices that the BSP might support, these devices are generically referred to as *dev*. In such cases, substitute the name of

each device or device type for *dev*. For example, if your BSP supports both ATA and SCSI devices, change `sysDev.c` to the pair of files `sysAta.c` and `sysScsi.c`.

projName

Each project must be given a name. When the project is created, several files are created based on the name given to the newly created project. These files are referred to as *projName*.

2

Overview of a BSP

- 2.1 Introduction 7
- 2.2 Boot Sequence 10
- 2.3 Components of a BSP 22
- 2.4 The Development Environment 46
- 2.5 Common Problems 53

2.1 Introduction

This chapter begins by introducing the BSP routines in the context of the VxWorks boot sequence. Later sections provide descriptions of each of the files containing the BSP routines and the standard preprocessor macros used to configure VxWorks. The chapter finishes with an overview of the BSP development environment and some brief insight into common mistakes.

Before describing the steps in the boot process, it is worth noting the files you must write or modify during BSP development. Most of the work involved in developing a BSP is accomplished by writing the following three routines:

romInit() in romInit.s
initializes the CPU and memory

sysHwInit() in sysLib.c
ensures that all board hardware is initialized to a quiescent state

sysHwInit2() in sysLib.c
further prepares the board hardware for use with VxWorks applications

A comprehensive list of the routines required in every BSP is provided in [2.3.4 Required Routines](#), p.35.

The following BSP files, device driver directories, and configuration directories are common to most BSPs:

Required BSP Files:

```
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/bspname.h  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/config.h  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/Makefile  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/README  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/romInit.s  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/sysALib.s  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/sysLib.c  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/target.ref (or  
target.nr)
```

Optional BSP Files:

```
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/sysSerial.c  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/configNet.h  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/sysEnd.c
```

VxBus Device Driver Directories:

```
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/busCtrl  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/console  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/cpu  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/dmaCtrl  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/end  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/intCtrl
```

```
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/mf  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/mii  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/nvram  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/resource  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/io  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/storage  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/timer  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/usb
```

Legacy Device Driver Directories:

```
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/end  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/hdisk  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/intrCtl  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/mem  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/parallel  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/pci  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/pcmcia  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/serial  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/sio  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/other
```

VxWorks Configuration Directories:

```
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/all  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/config  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/comps  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/comps/src  
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/comps/vxWorks
```



NOTE: The list of files and directories provided above is *not* a complete list. Your BSP is likely to require additional files and directories and may not include all of the files and directories listed above. For more information, see the VxWorks reference BSPs included in your installation.

2.2 Boot Sequence

This section describes the steps in a typical VxWorks boot scenario and identifies which routines implement each step. All processors execute the same logical process in initializing and loading VxWorks, although some may require an extra step or two and others may skip certain steps.

2.2.1 Sequence Overview

At a minimum, initializing a processor consists of providing a portion of code, and possibly some tables, that are located at the specific location in memory that the processor jumps to upon reset or power-up of the target system. This code sets the processor to a specific state, initializes memory and memory addressing, disables interrupts, and then passes control to additional bootstrapping code.

Upon power-up or reset, the processor first jumps to the entry point in ROM, `_romInit()`. The assembly code at the jump destination sets up memory, initializes the processor status word, and creates a temporary stack. The processor then jumps to a C routine (`romStart()` in `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/all/bootInit.c`). A parameter in a register or on a temporary stack determines whether memory must be cleared (cold start) and then copies the appropriate sections of ROM into RAM. If the code in ROM is compressed, it is decompressed during the copy. Next, the processor jumps to the VxWorks entry point in RAM.

The VxWorks entry point is `_sysInit()` in `sysALib.s`. This assembly routine sets the initial hardware state (much as `_romInit()` does) and then jumps to `usrInit()` in `usrConfig.c`. `usrInit()` is the first C routine that runs from a VxWorks image. This routine initializes the cache, clears the block storage segment (bss) to zero, initializes the vector table, performs board-specific initialization, and then starts the multitasking kernel with a user-booting task.

[Figure 2-1](#) provides an overview of the boot sequence when VxWorks is booted from an image.

[Figure 2-2](#) illustrates the boot sequence used when VxWorks is booted from a ROM-based loader. Note that the boot sequence after `usrInit()` is the same as that shown in [Figure 2-1](#).

Figure 2-1 Boot Sequence Using a VxWorks Image

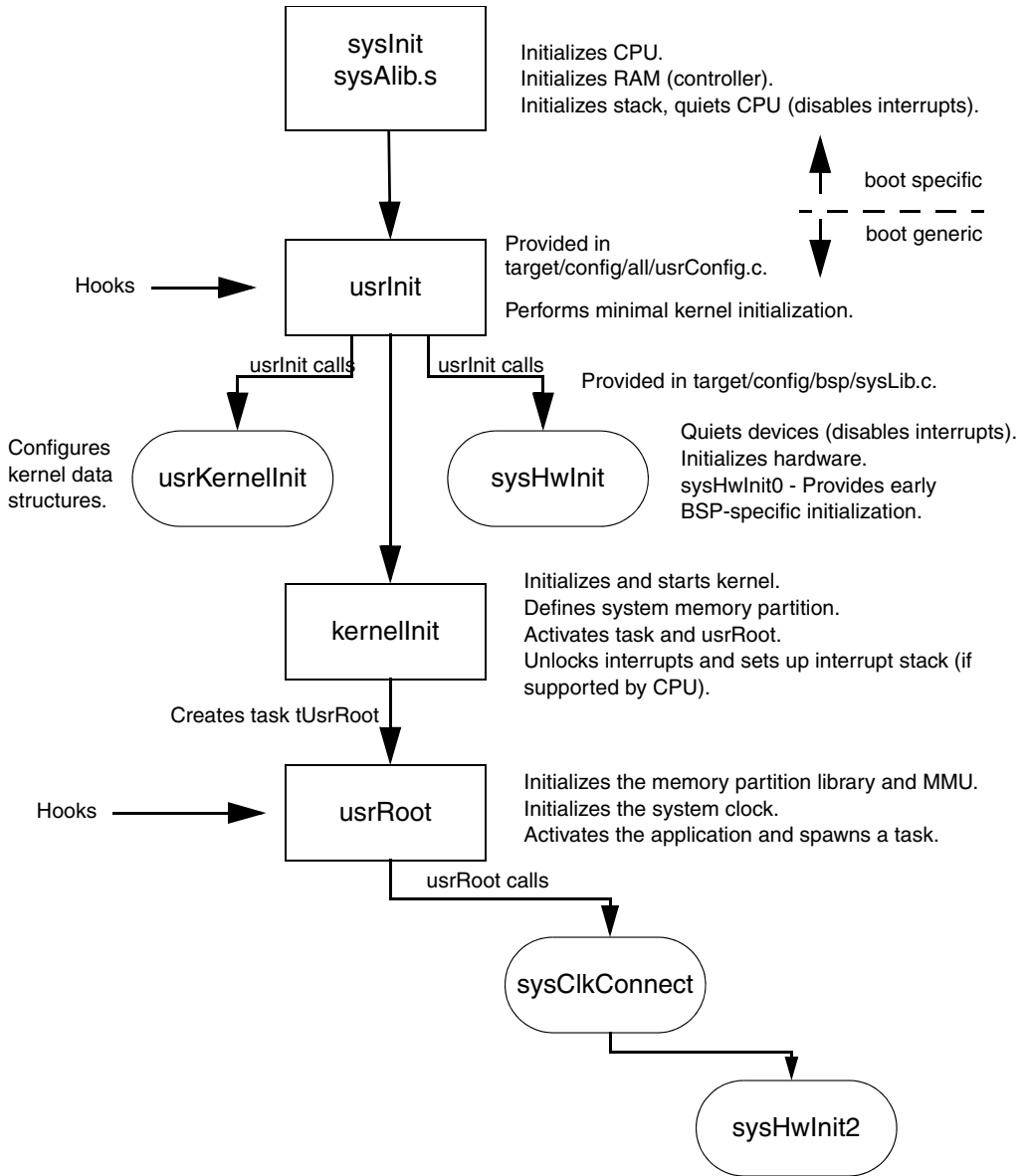
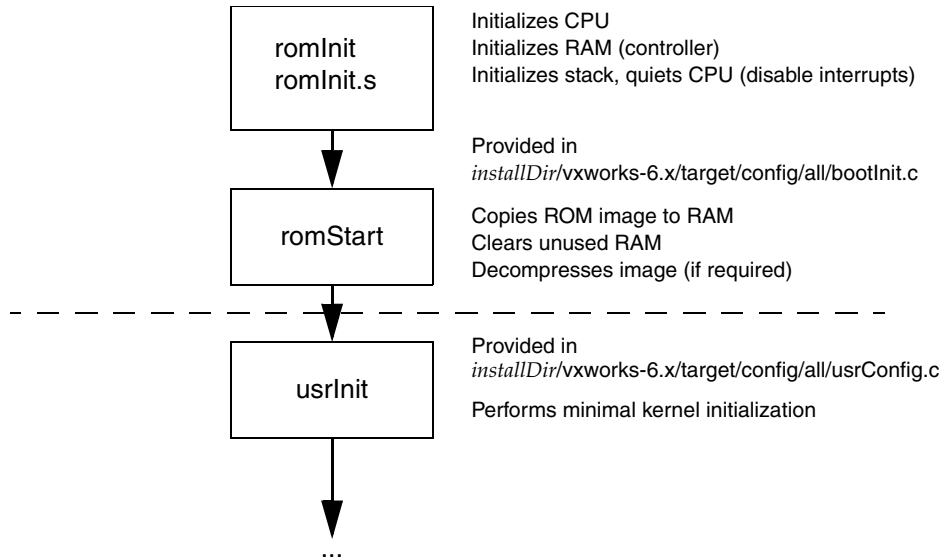


Figure 2-2 **Boot Sequence Using a ROM Image**



2.2.2 Boot Sequence Configurations

There are several boot sequence configurations that are commonly supported. For BSPs intended for specific applications only, at least one of the methods is supported. General-purpose BSPs support all boot methods.

For development, the most common boot method is through the presence of a ROM-based boot loader. The purpose of this boot loader is to load the final VxWorks image from a remote development host (or possibly from a local file system) and then to start running the newly downloaded image. The boot image is a specially-crafted version of VxWorks with a boot loader as its only application. Because this boot image is largely independent of development changes, it is seldom necessary to re-program the flash, which saves development time. The boot image is referred to as **bootrom**; the OS image that is loaded is referred to as **vxWorks**. These images are described later in the document.

Another alternative boot method is to put the VxWorks image into flash directly. Typically, both the core OS and the application code reside in the same image. In this case, there is no intermediate step between loading the boot loader and loading the application image. Also, no file system is needed to hold the final VxWorks image file. Although this boot method can be used for development, progress can be hindered by the need to re-program the flash often. However, this is a very common boot mechanism in final product delivery.

Whether loading a VxWorks image from flash or loading a boot loader from flash, there are special requirements. The processor's reset vector causes it to start execution of the code in flash memory. This flash-resident code can do one of several things. It can:

- Continue running from flash (that is, fetch instructions from the flash memory and execute them).
- Copy itself from flash to RAM and branch to an appropriate place in the RAM copy.
- Decompress a compressed image contained in flash and put the image into RAM, then branch to an appropriate place in the RAM copy.

The names of the different image types are determined both by the build method used and by the behavior of the image.

An image that continues running from flash and is built from a project is normally called **vxWorks_romResident**. Such an image built from the command line is typically called one of the following image types:

- **vxWorks.res_rom**
- **vxWorks.res_rom_res_low**
- **vxWorks.res_rom_nosym**
- **vxWorks.res_rom_nosym_res_low**
- **bootrom_res**
- **bootrom_res_high**

An image that copies itself from flash to RAM and is built from a project is normally called **vxWorks_rom**. Such an image built from the command line is normally called **vxWorks.st** or **bootrom_uncmp**.

An image that decompresses itself and puts the results in RAM, and is built from a project, is generally called **vxWorks_romCompress**. Such an image built from the command line is called **vxWorks.st_rom** or **bootrom**.

If a boot loader loads a VxWorks image, whether from a local file system or from a remote host, the image is referred to as **vxWorks**, regardless of how it is built.

A more detailed description of each image type is listed below. Much of this information can be found in the file `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/h/make/rules.bsp` in your installation.

vxWorks

The primary VxWorks image that is loaded by a boot loader from a local file system or from a remote host. If a downloaded symbol table is configured, **vxWorks** requires the **vxWorks.sym** file.

vxWorks.sym

A symbol table that is loaded from the same file system and directory as the **vxWorks** image itself.

vxWorks_rom

A VxWorks standalone ROM image programmed into flash that copies itself to RAM for execution. This format is typically used when making an application in ROM that does not include the shell or the symbol table. Because these images are usually smaller, this version does not use ROM compression.

vxWorks.st

A VxWorks standalone image that is loaded by a boot loader from a local file system or from a remote host. This VxWorks image has a symbol table already linked in, so it does not need to load **vxWorks.sym** from a local file system or over the network. This image requires a large ROM space and a large RAM space. This image can not be run from ROM.

vxWorks.st_rom

A VxWorks standalone image programmed into flash that decompresses itself to RAM for execution. This image includes a linked-in symbol table so that a complete VxWorks image with shell and symbol table is put into ROM. Because these systems tend to be large, ROM compression is used. This rule also creates **vxImage.o** for use as a "core" file (to provide a symbol table) for the target server or other host-based debugger. This image uses less ROM than a **vxWorks** image and requires a large RAM space.



NOTE: This image format may require larger EEPROMs. The user is advised to check the macros for ROM sizes and offsets for compatibility.

vxWorks.res_rom

A VxWorks image programmed into flash. This image copies the data segment from flash into RAM, but continues to fetch instructions from flash. This image includes a linked-in symbol table so that a complete VxWorks image with shell and symbol table is put into ROM. This type of image uses less RAM than a

vxWorks image and requires a large ROM space. In general, execution is slow for all ROM-resident images, as compared to RAM-resident images.

vxWorks.res_rom_res_low

This image is similar to **vxWorks.res_rom**, but sometimes starts the data segment in RAM closer to **RAM_LOW_ADRS** on some architectures.

vxWorks.res_rom_nosym

A VxWorks image programmed into flash. This image copies the data segment from flash into RAM, but continues to fetch instructions from flash. This image does not include a symbol table. This image uses a small amount of RAM and requires a large ROM space. This type of image has a quick start time but executes more slowly than a RAM image.

vxWorks.res_rom_nosym_res_low

This image is similar to **vxWorks.res_rom_nosym**, but sometimes starts the data segment in RAM closer to **RAM_LOW_ADRS** for some architectures.

bootrom

A VxWorks image with a boot loader application that is programmed into flash. This image decompresses itself into RAM for execution. This image requires a minimal amount of ROM space and a large RAM space.

bootrom_uncmp

A VxWorks image with a boot loader application that is programmed into flash. This image copies itself into RAM for execution. This image requires a large amount of both RAM and ROM but executes quickly.

bootrom_res

A VxWorks image with a boot loader application that is programmed into flash. This image copies its data segment into RAM for execution, but continues fetching instructions from flash. This image requires a large ROM space and little RAM space.

bootrom_res_high

A VxWorks image with a boot loader application that is programmed into flash. This image copies its data segment into RAM for execution, but continues fetching instructions from flash. This image loads the VxWorks image into a higher location in RAM.

In the information presented above, references are made to **bootrom**, which is a VxWorks image configured with a boot loader as its application. While this is typically how the image is loaded during development, and in released products as well, it is also possible for VxWorks to be loaded by an external agent of some kind. For example, the image can be loaded by a boot loader not based on VxWorks, such as a ROM monitor, or the image can be loaded directly into RAM

by a hardware debugger such as the Wind River ICE SX. For more information, see [2.4 The Development Environment](#), p.46. Also consult the documents listed in [1. Introduction](#).

2.2.3 Architecture Considerations

The VxWorks BSP design was developed to be architecture-independent. However, many architectures and boards have special requirements. This section briefly discusses some of these special considerations. This discussion is not intended to be complete or comprehensive, but is intended to give an idea of the kinds of customizations that may affect a BSP port.



NOTE: The architectures discussed in this section are examples only. Your VxWorks installation may not include support for all architectures described here. For a list of supported architectures, see the Wind River Online Support Web site or your product's release notes. In addition, architectures not discussed in this section may have special BSP requirements as well. For more information regarding your target architecture, see the appropriate *VxWorks Architecture Supplement*.

The MIPS processor uses a **ModeIn** input pin to set 256 bits of initialization information. This information is stored in non-volatile memory, usually somewhere other than on the processor chip. Board designers have the option of providing this information in a special part of ROM or NVRAM dedicated to this purpose. However, they might also design the board to gate this information from the boot flash. If this is the case, the flash image must reserve 32 bytes at the beginning of the image, initialized as required by the CPU.

The Intel i960 processor has a similar requirement called the initial boot record (IBR). However, for the i960, instead of just 256 configuration bits, the IBR contains an exhaustive table that defines memory regions, interrupt table information, exception handling information, and other items. This IBR must be at a fixed location, in much the way that the initial program counter is set to a fixed location on other processors, and the BSP must know how to handle this situation.

The most common memory configuration is for RAM to be located at addresses beginning with 0, and for flash to be addressed in regions of upper memory. However, on some architectures and for some types of applications, it is customary to design the board so that flash is located at address 0 and RAM is in upper memory. In addition, many processors locate their interrupt vectors at address 0 by default. For boards designed in such a way that the interrupt vectors are located in flash, there are two requirements. First, a set of default interrupt vectors must be

located at the beginning of the flash image. Second, some mechanism must be made available for the BSP to change the contents of the vectors when VxWorks boots.

Some processors allow both big- and little-endian configurations. Typically, a BSP supports only one byte order type. If both configurations are supported, a second BSP is typically created and named with `_le` or `_be` suffix. For example, the `ixp1200eb` BSP is configured for little-endian mode and the `ixp1200eb_be` BSP is configured for big-endian mode. In this situation, the boot ROMs cannot typically boot images from the other byte order.

2.2.4 Detailed Boot Sequence

The following is a step-by-step description of a generic boot sequence.

Step 1: Execute `romInit()`

At power-up (cold start), the processor begins execution at the `romInit()` entry point, located in `romInit.s`. For resets (warm starts), the processor begins execution at `romInit()` plus a small offset (see `sysToMonitor()` in `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname/sysLib.c`). The `romInit()` routine must be written in assembly language.

The purpose of this routine is to initialize the CPU and some portion of memory. It does the absolute minimum amount of initialization—that is, the initialization of essential hardware only—before jumping to `romStart()`. If `romInit()` is working correctly, the memory from `LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS` through `(LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS + LOCAL_MEM_SIZE)` should be readable and writable. If this is not the case, `romInit()` is not working properly.

In addition to initializing memory as described above, the `romInit()` routine must also disable interrupts and clear caches. `romInit()` then configures the boot type (cold or warm) to be a subroutine argument and branches to `romStart()` in `bootInit.c`. For more information on configuring the boot type, see [2.3.7 Hardware Considerations](#), p.45.

`romInit()` must do only as much device setup as is required to start executing C code. Hardware initialization is the responsibility of the `sysHwInit()` routine in `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/sysLib.c`, which is called later during the boot sequence.

Step 2: Execute `romStart()`

The purpose of the `romStart()` routine is to move all further bootstrap code from ROM into RAM and then, if necessary, jump to the VxWorks image. Because this implementation depends only on the CPU architecture, the `romStart()` routine is provided by Wind River and is located in the file `bootInit.c`. Typically, `romStart()` jumps to the `usrInit()` routine in RAM.

The required execution steps are as follows:

1. Copy the data segment from flash to RAM. Depending on the image type, you may also need to copy the text segment. If necessary, decompress the data during the copy.
2. Clear unused RAM.
3. The `romStart()` routine then jumps to the RAM entry point, `sysInit()`, which is located in `sysALib.s`. The boot type (cold or warm) is passed as an argument to `sysInit()`.

Step 3: Execute `sysInit()`

The `sysInit()` routine is the RAM entry point. `sysInit()`—which should be the first routine defined in `sysALib.s`—invalidates caches if applicable, initializes the system interrupt tables with default stubs, initializes the system fault tables with default stubs, and initializes all processor registers to known default values. The routine also enables tracing, clears all pending interrupts, and finally invokes `usrInit()` with the argument `bootType`.

This routine must duplicate much of the hardware initialization done by `romInit()` in order to set the run-time state rather than the boot state. Keep in mind that the board may have been booted using a ROM monitor or hardware debugger. In this case, the VxWorks boot ROM code, where `romInit()` is located, is not executed and VxWorks system initialization is not performed. Therefore, failure to duplicate the initialization code from `romInit()` may result in BSP failure.

Step 4: Execute `usrInit()`

The purpose of the `usrInit()` routine is to completely initialize the CPU and shut down any other hardware, thus preparing the way for the kernel to initialize and start itself. This routine is located in `usrConfig.c` but calls routines in several other files, some of which you must provide and some of which are provided by Wind River. Normally, it is not necessary to modify the `usrInit()` routine provided by Wind River. However, the `sysHwInit()` routine that must be called from `usrInit()` typically does require modification. The `sysHwInit()` routine ensures that the

board-dependent hardware is quiescent. **sysHwInit()** is provided in the reference BSP or template and is located in **sysLib.c**.

The **usrInit()** routine (in **usrConfig.c**) saves information about the boot type, handles all initialization that must be performed before the kernel is actually started, and then starts the kernel execution. It is the first C code to run in VxWorks. This routine is invoked in supervisor mode with all hardware interrupts locked out.

Many facilities cannot be invoked from this routine. There is no task context yet—that is, no task control block (TCB) and no thread stack—therefore, facilities that require a task context cannot be invoked. This includes any facility that can cause the caller to be preempted (such as semaphores) or any facility that itself uses a facility of this type, such as **printf()**. Instead, the **usrInit()** routine does only what is necessary to create the initial thread, **usrRoot()**. **usrRoot()** then completes the startup.

The initialization operations performed in **usrInit()** include the following:

- Initializing cache.
The code at the beginning of **usrInit()** initializes the caches, sets the mode of the caches, and puts the caches in a safe state. At the end of **usrInit()**, the instruction and data caches are enabled by default.
- Zeroing out the system BSS segment.
C language specifies that all uninitialized variables (stored in bss) must have initial values of 0. Because **usrInit()** is the first C code to execute, it clears the section of memory containing bss.
- Initializing interrupt vectors.
The exception vectors must be initialized before enabling interrupts and starting the kernel. First, **intVecBaseSet()** is called to establish the vector table base address.



NOTE: The **intVecBaseSet()** routine is not called first on all architectures. For more information, see the appropriate *VxWorks Architecture Supplement*.

After **intVecBaseSet()** is called, the routine **excVecInit()** initializes all exception vectors to default handlers. These handlers safely trap and report exceptions caused by program errors or unexpected hardware interrupts.

- Initializing system hardware to a quiescent state.

Calling the system-dependent routine **sysHwInit()** initializes the system hardware. Initialization mainly consists of resetting and disabling hardware devices. Otherwise, when the kernel is started and interrupts are enabled, these devices can cause unexpected interrupts.

In VxWorks, ISRs (for I/O devices, system clocks, and so on) are not connected to their interrupt vectors until system initialization is completed by the **usrRoot()** task. This is a requirement because the memory pool is not yet initialized. You must not connect an interrupt handler to an interrupt during the **sysHwInit()** call; doing so requires memory allocation, which is not available at this time. Most interrupt connection occurs later in the **sysHwInit2()** routine located in **sysLib.c**.



NOTE: Ensure that all interrupts are disabled. A typical problem during BSP development is that an interrupt is not correctly disabled in **sysHwInit()**. When this happens, the system can hang once interrupts are enabled in **usrInit()** and it can be difficult to determine the cause of the problem.

- Calling **kernelInit()**.

The VxWorks libraries contain the code for **kernelInit()**. Therefore, it is not normally available to BSP developers in source form. The **kernelInit()** routine initiates the multitasking environment and never returns. It takes the following parameters:

- address of the routine to be spawned as the root task, typically **usrRoot()**
- stack size
- start of usable memory; that is, the memory after the main text, data, and bss segments of the VxWorks image. All memory after this area is allocated to the system memory pool, which is managed by **memPartLib**. All cached dynamic allocations are derived from this memory pool.
- top of cached memory as indicated by **sysMemTop()**
- interrupt stack size. The interrupt stack corresponds to the largest amount of stack space that can be used by any interrupt-level routine that may be called, plus a safety margin for the nesting of interrupts.
- interrupt lockout level. For architectures that have a level concept, it is the maximum level. For architectures that do not have a level concept, it is a mask to disable interrupts. For more details, see the appropriate *VxWorks Architecture Supplement*.

Step 5: Execute `kernelInit()`

The `kernelInit()` routine is provided by Wind River in a VxWorks library archive file. The purpose of this routine is to get the kernel up and running so that all further initialization can be done as a task running under the kernel. The name of this task is `tRootTask`, and the routine it executes is typically `usrRoot()`.

The `kernelInit()` routine calls `intLockLevelSet()`, disables round-robin scheduling mode, and creates an interrupt stack (if supported by the architecture). The routine then creates a root stack and a task control block (TCB) from the top of the memory pool, spawns the root thread `usrRoot()`, and terminates the `usrInit()` thread of execution. At this time, interrupts are enabled. It is critical that all interrupt sources be disabled by `usrInit()`, and that all pending interrupts be cleared. Failure to do so causes system failure as described in *Creating Additional Diagnostic Routines*, p.67.

Step 6: Execute `usrRoot()` as a task

The purpose of the `usrRoot()` routine is to complete the initialization of the kernel and all hardware, then launch any application code. This routine is supplied by Wind River in the `usrConfig.c` file, and the original copy should not be changed. During development, `usrConfig.c` is often temporarily copied to the BSP directory, and debugging changes are made to the temporary copy. `usrConfig.c` is also configurable with the macros defined in `config.h`.

➔ **NOTE:** Do not use a custom version of `usrConfig.c` in your final BSP.

The `usrRoot()` routine calls the `memInit()` routine. Optionally, `usrRoot()` can call the `memShowInit()` and `usrMmuInit()` routines.

Once the system is multitasking, the BSP calls its first routine, `sysClkConnect()`. `sysClkConnect()` immediately calls the `sysHwInit2()` routine. `sysHwInit2()` is responsible for any board initialization not completed in `sysHwInit()`, such as the connection of interrupt sources using `intConnect()`.

Next, the `usrRoot()` routine continues the clock initialization. It sets the default clock rate to the value of the macro `SYS_CLK_RATE`, typically 60 Hz. `usrRoot()` then enables the system clock with a call to `sysClkEnable()`.

➔ **NOTE:** The system clock can be dynamically changed from the shell or from an application. However, facilities that take a “snapshot” of the clock rate (for example, `spyLib`) can be broken by an unexpected rate change.

Once the clock is initialized and running, several kernel modules, such as `selectLib`, the I/O subsystem, and the console, are initialized. For details, see the

source code in **usrConfig.c** as well as the macros defined in **configAll.h** and **config.h**.

If **INCLUDE_WDB** is defined, **wdbConfig()** in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/config/usrWdb.c* is called. This routine initializes the agent's communication interface, and then starts the debug agent. For information on configuring the agent, see the *VxWorks Kernel Programmer's Guide: Target Tools*. The debug agent is the portion of VxWorks that connects to and serves the Workbench tools such as the shell and the debugger.

If the **INCLUDE_USR_APPL** macro is defined, the default **usrRoot()** code executes the **USER_APPL_INIT** macro. This macro allows you to start your application automatically at boot time. The BSP assumes that the **USER_APPL_INIT** macro is a valid C statement. For more information on **USER_APPL_INIT**, see the appropriate VxWorks programmer's guide.

2.3 Components of a BSP

The BSP directory contains source files, header files, a makefile (**Makefile**), one or more documentation files (**target.nr** or **target.ref**), and possibly other files such as derived files and object modules distributed in object format only.

From the BSP directory, other derivative files may be generated; for example, there may be files generated for a project. Some derived files are not put into the BSP directory itself. These include the WPJ project file, additional source and header files, a custom **usrAppInit.c** file, another makefile for use with the project facility, and directories containing object modules.

In addition to the BSP directory, there are several other directories that contain files related to the BSP.

The *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/all* directory contains some source and header files that are used by the BSPs for default configuration. The files in this directory should never be changed. If changes to a file are necessary, copy the file to the BSP directory and make changes to the local copy.

The makefile provides a mechanism that allows you to use the local copy instead of the common version. The following macros designate a private copy of the related files:

USRCONFIG	usrConfig.c
BOOTINIT	bootInit.c
DATASEGPAD	dataSegPad.c

For example, to use a private version of **usrConfig.c**, set the macro **USRCONFIG** to **usrConfig.c** in **Makefile** as follows:

```
USRCONFIG = usrConfig.c
```

2.3.1 Source and Include Files

BSP routines are contained in a number of C and assembly files that you may need to modify or create. These routines are located in a relatively small number of source files. This section provides a list of these source files as well as a detailed description of each file. Each file is also documented extensively in the reference and template BSPs (see the code comments in each file).

The following files, in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname*, may need to be created or modified:

README	documentation file
Makefile	makefile for building the BSP
config.h	header file for configuring the OS
<i>bspname.h</i>	header file for non-configurable definitions
romInit.s	includes the romInit() routine and any subroutines used by romInit() .
sysALib.s	contains assembly routines that are not part of romInit() (optional).
sysLib.c	contains the sysHwInit() routine and additional C language routines specific to the target hardware.

sysDev.c If used, this file contains the device driver interface to the physical hardware device, *Dev*.

Note that the actual device driver files are kept in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/drvType* (VxBus model device drivers) and *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/drvType* (legacy model device drivers). For example, *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/sio* contains serial drivers.

There may be multiple **sysDev.c** files.

target.ref BSP documentation file (uses the **apigen** markup language). For more information on BSP documentation files, see [B. Implementing Documentation Guidelines](#), or the reference entry for **apigen**. (VxWorks 5.5 users can consult the reference entry for **refgen**.)

target.nr Older BSP documentation file (uses nroff markup language). This file is superseded by the **target.ref** file but is still used in some older BSPs. For more information on BSP documentation files, see [B. Implementing Documentation Guidelines](#).

The following files, located in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/all*, may be copied to the BSP directory and modified during BSP development by adding diagnostic statements. Typically, the files used in the final version of the BSP are not modified.

configAll.h global header file for configuring the OS

bootInit.c contains the **romStart()** routine

usrConfig.c contains the **usrInit()** and **usrRoot()** routines

Typically, the following file, in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/config*, is not modified:

usrKernel.c This file contains all the **#ifdefs** that are controlled by makefile macros to configure the kernel.

README

Use this plain-text file to document the history of the BSP. That is, include information on when you wrote the BSP, any modifications made, which BSP was used as a template, what general changes you made, and so on.

Makefile

This file controls the build of the VxWorks image. You must set several variables within this makefile. The required variables are listed and described in the [2.3.5 Required Macros](#), p.42.

config.h

This header file contains all **#include** and **#define** macros specific to configuring the CPU and board architectures. It also contains any necessary overrides to the macro definitions in **configAll.h**, which you must include using **#include**. You must also include the *bspname.h* header in this file.

bspname.h

This header file contains all the header information for the BSP that is not related to OS configuration. The information in this header file is required under all configurations of VxWorks using this BSP. This file includes any headers for device drivers.

Use *bspname.h* to set all non-optional, board-specific information, as defined in this file; including definitions for the serial interface, timer, and I/O devices.

This file is intended for constant information that is not subject to user configuration. If any macros or values defined in this file can be changed to customize this system, define those macros or values in **config.h** instead.



NOTE: In general, use the **config.h** file to define configurable values and the *bspname.h* file to define values fixed in hardware.

When developing your BSP, it is helpful to use a sample header file as a starting point. In most cases, the sample file requires minimal modification because most constant names, basic device addresses, and so on are already defined in the sample file. Define the following in *bspname.h*:

interrupt vectors and levels

Define all interrupt vectors and levels that are dictated by hardware in *bspname.h*.

I/O device addresses

Define all I/O addresses fixed by hardware in *bspname.h*.

meaning of device register bits

For on-board control registers, define a macro value for each bit or group of bits in each register. Place such macro definitions in *bspname.h* if there is no better location (such as a device-specific header file) for them.

system and auxiliary clock parameters

Define maximum and minimum rates.



NOTE: It is advisable to include macros describing all available bits, or groups of bits in each control register, even if those bits are not used by the BSP.

sysALib.s

This file contains the RAM image's entry point, `_sysInit()`. `_sysInit()` performs any required hardware-specific initialization before jumping to `usrInit()` in `usrConfig.c`.

Any additional utility routines that must be written in assembly language and are required during normal system operation are also contained in `sysALib.s`.

romInit.s

This assembly file contains the `romInit()` routine, which is the entry point for bootstrapping, plus any `romInit()` subroutines. The `romInit()` routine must be the first routine in the text segment of `romInit.s`.

At power-up (cold start) the processor begins execution at `romInit()`. For warm starts, the processor begins execution at `romInit()` plus a small offset (see `sysToMonitor()` in `sysLib.c`). Most hardware and device initialization is performed later in the boot sequence by `sysHwInit()`, which is located in `sysLib.c`. The job of `romInit()` is to perform the minimal setup needed to transfer control to `romStart()`, located in `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/all/bootInit.c`. The minimal setup includes:

- Initializing the processor (this code is specific to the processor but not the board, and thus can be copied from a reference BSP):
 - mask processor interrupts
 - set the initial stack pointer to `STACK_ADRS` (defined in `configAll.h`)
 - disable processor caches

- Initializing access to target DRAM as needed for the following (this code is board-specific):
 - wait states
 - refresh rate
 - chip-selects
 - disabling secondary (L2) caches (if needed)

At the end of the initialization sequence, **romInit()** jumps to **romStart()** in **bootInit.c**, passing the start type. The start type is **BOOT_COLD** for a cold boot, or the parameter passed from **sysToMonitor()** on a warm boot.

For more information, see **romInit.s** in a reference BSP or the template **romInit.s** file in the template BSP. Also see [2.3.7 Hardware Considerations](#), p.45.

sysLib.c

The **sysLib.c** file contains the routines that directly or indirectly initialize all hardware device drivers. The principal routines for initializing the hardware drivers are **sysHwInit()** and **sysHwInit2()**, but additional driver initialization routines are called by **usrRoot()**, such as **sysClkConnect()**, which calls **sysHwInit2()**. These routines are described in [2.3.4 Required Routines](#), p.35. Also see the source code in your reference BSP or the template BSP.

While **sysLib.c** is the largest BSP file, in the early phases of BSP development it is advisable to implement only the basics, including **sysModel()**, **sysBspRev()**, **sysHwInit()**, **sysHwInit2()**, and **sysMemTop()**.

The file **sysLib.c** also includes the following NVRAM stub drivers during initial development:

```
#include "mem/nullNvram.c"  
#include "vme/nullVme.c"
```

Additional information about NVRAM support is provided in [3.3.4 Enabling NVRAM](#), p.80.

The **sysHwInit()** routine is the heart of **sysLib.c**, and most of the initial work is done here. **sysHwInit()** is the routine that resets all devices to a quiescent state so that they do not generate interrupts later on when interrupts are enabled.



NOTE: When hardware features are missing, it is usually safe to code an empty stub in **sysLib.c**. If any return value is required, the stub can return **ERROR** or **NULL**, whichever is appropriate.

target.ref or target.nr

This file describes the BSP, and is used to generate automatic online documentation in HTML format. To format the documentation as HTML, type **make man** in the BSP directory.

For more information on updating and using this file, see [3.3.8 Updating BSP-Specific Documentation](#), p.105, and [B. Implementing Documentation Guidelines](#).

board.jpg

This optional file contains a JPEG image of the target system board. You may wish to label the images to show the serial connector, power connector, and Ethernet connector.

sysDev.c

Legacy drivers are split between the core driver and a BSP support file called **sysDev.c**. If used, this file contains the device driver interface to the physical hardware device, *dev*. Note that for legacy device drivers, the core device driver files are kept in *installDir/vxworks-6.2/target/src/drv/drvType*; for example *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/sio* contains legacy serial drivers. There may be multiple **sysDev.c** files.



NOTE: VxBus drivers do not require **sysDev.c** files. (For more information on VxBus, see the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 1: Fundamentals of Writing Device Drivers*.)

Each device driver available for target hardware has its own **sysDev.c** file, where *Dev* is a short identifier for the target hardware. For example, **sysNet.c** and **sysSerial.c** would identify network interface and serial port drivers, respectively. Some device drivers are optional and the standard drivers provided in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv* can be used. In some cases, custom device drivers must be created for a BSP, and these custom drivers should reside in the

BSP directory (although this is not a requirement). Device driver files are detailed in the following sections of this guide:

- [3.2.10 Minimum Required Drivers](#), p.75
- [3.2.11 Serial Drivers](#), p.76
- [3.3.9 Providing Additional Optional Device Support](#), p.106

Additional information on device drivers can be found in the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide*.

The `sysDev.c` files are normally included in `sysLib.c` with a `#include` rather than compiled separately. This allows hardware drivers to be shared between BSPs without adding complexity to the makefiles.



NOTE: In some cases, the `sysDev.c` file contains the actual device driver instead of an interface between the driver and the OS. This is considered incorrect design. The preferred method is to have the driver contained in a separate file, `devType.c` (for example, `acmeSio.c`) and the interface module contained in the `sysDev.c` file (for example, `sysAcmeSio.c`). This method allows for better code reuse.

hwconf.c

The `hwconf.c` file contains hardware configuration information used by VxBus. This information is kept in tables, and is read by VxBus during configuration. There is no executable code present in this file. For more information on VxBus, see the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 1: Fundamentals of Writing Device Drivers*.

configAll.h

This file contains the default OS configuration for all BSPs, and should only be changed under extreme circumstances. Changing this file makes your BSP incompatible with all default VxWorks installations. Any `make` variable defined in this file can be overridden in `config.h`.



CAUTION: Changing `configAll.h` can impact other VxWorks users sharing your VxWorks installation.

bootInit.c

The **bootInit.c** file contains **romStart()**, which is the first C routine to execute during the VxWorks boot process. This routine is architecture-independent and should not require changing.



NOTE: The **bootInit.c** file is shared by all BSPs. Ensure that changes made to **bootInit.c** do not impact the functionality of other BSPs.

The routine **romStart()** is essentially a loader. It performs the necessary decompression and relocation for the ROM images. First, it copies the text and data segments from ROM to RAM. Then, it clears those parts of the main RAM not otherwise used. Finally, **romStart()** decompresses the compressed portion of the image. Different configuration options can modify how these operations are performed.

usrConfig.c

The **usrConfig.c** file contains the **usrInit()** and **usrRoot()** routines. When **usrRoot()** completes, the VxWorks boot is complete. Both **usrInit()** and **usrRoot()** are architecture-independent, and thus should not require changing.



NOTE: The **usrConfig.c** file is shared by all BSPs. Because of this, you must ensure that changes made to **usrConfig.c** do not impact the functionality of other BSPs.

During BSP development, the **usrConfig.c** file is usually copied into the BSP directory and modified to allow the user to control what hardware is initialized (this is achieved by removing portions of **usrRoot()** using **#if FALSE/#endif** pairs). The temporary copy must be discarded when the BSP is complete. Therefore, changes are limited to debug code only.

2.3.2 Derived Files

The most obvious files derived from the BSP files are the VxWorks images. There may be multiple copies of VxWorks images present in a BSP directory, each representing a different build type. For example, it is possible for the BSP directory to contain **bootrom**, **bootrom_uncmp**, **vxWorks** (and its **vxWorks.sym** file), **vxWorks.st**, and **vxWorks.res_rom** as well as several other images all at the same time.

In addition, building the source files in the BSP directory generates object files. There is not a one-to-one correspondence between source files and object files. As mentioned in *sysLib.c*, p.27, the **sysLib.c** file uses the **#include** compiler preprocessor directive to include other source files, especially the **sysDev.c** files. For example, in the wrSbc8260 BSP, there is a file called **sysIOPort.c** that contains interface code for the PowerPC 8260 I/O port drivers. The **#include** is as follows:

```
#include "sysIOPort.c"
```

This means that the BSP contains a source file **sysIOPort.c** that does not have a corresponding object module. Instead of a separate object module, that object code is included in **sysLib.o**.

Another source of derived files is the **target.ref** (or **target.nr**) documentation file in the BSP directory. This file is maintained in an unprocessed form that is difficult to read. To process the **target.ref** file, issue a **make man** command in the BSP directory. This command results in a new HTML file that is suitable for online viewing. For more information on the HTML output or the **target.ref** file, see [B. Implementing Documentation Guidelines](#).

Other objects derived from files in the BSP directory are related to the project facility. Each time a bootable project is created from a BSP directory, a *projName.wpj* file is created. A project also contains several derived source and header files including a makefile for use with the project facility, a **prjObjs.lst** file containing a list of all the object modules used for the build, and directories containing the object modules and VxWorks images themselves. Note that although these objects are derived from information in the BSP directory, the objects themselves are not located in the BSP directory.

2.3.3 Required Data Variables

You must declare and initialize the following data variables in your BSP:

sysPhysMemDesc[]	determines physical memory layout
sysPhysMemDescNumEnt	number of entries in sysPhysMemDesc[]
sysBootLine	address of boot line
sysExcMsg	catastrophic message area
sysFlags	boot flags

hcfDeviceList[]	Static hardware configuration information.
hcfDeviceNum	Number of devices in hcfDeviceList[] .
<i>devUnitCfgData[]</i>	Device configuration information.

sysPhysMemDesc[]

The **sysPhysMemDesc[]** array holds descriptions of different memory ranges on the board.

```
PHYS_MEM_DESC sysPhysMemDesc[ ]
```

The array is used by several VxWorks libraries, including the memory management subsystem. This array must be initialized by the BSP. Typically, it is initialized statically during compile time, but it may also be initialized dynamically early in the boot process.

Values for statically defined **sysPhysMemDesc[]** entries are assigned using descriptive macro names.

The kinds of memory described by **sysPhysMemDesc[]** entries include system RAM, flash, or ROM, memory mapped processor registers, board registers, memory mapped device registers including PCI memory space, vector table, static RAM, or anything else that uses a memory mapped address range.

The fields included in the **PHYS_MEM_DESC** structure are, in order:

virtualAddr

the virtual address of the beginning of the memory region

physicalAddr

the physical address of the beginning of the memory region

len

the length, in bytes, of the memory region

initialStateMask

a mask for the initial VM state

initialState

the initial state to which the memory management library should set the memory



NOTE: VxWorks is a 32-bit OS, so it supports 32-bit virtual addressing. However, on hardware that provides an address space larger than 32 bits, VxWorks supports a physical addressing space of up to 64 bits.

The masks used in **initialStateMask** are defined in **vmLib.h**:

```
VM_STATE_MASK_VALID  
VM_STATE_MASK_WRITABLE  
VM_STATE_MASK_CACHEABLE  
VM_STATE_MASK_MEM_COHERENCY  
VM_STATE_MASK_GUARDED
```

Additional mask values may be available on some architectures. Check **vmLib.h** and the appropriate architecture supplement for more information.

The following state values are available:

```
VM_STATE_VALID  
VM_STATE_WRITABLE  
VM_STATE_CACHEABLE  
VM_STATE_MEM_COHERENCY  
VM_STATE_GUARDED
```

Additional state values may be available on some architectures. Check **vmLib.h** and the appropriate architecture supplement for more information.

sysPhysMemDescNumEnt

The **sysPhysMemDescNumEnt** variable contains the number of entries in **sysPhysMemDesc[]**.

```
int sysPhysMemDescNumEnt
```

This variable is typically initialized statically at compile time.

sysBootLine

The **sysBootLine** string pointer points to the boot line that is configured for use when booting the system.

```
char *sysBootLine
```

The boot information is parsed using **bootLineCrack()**. It is typically set to the value **BOOT_LINE_ADRS**, and points to the boot line information in NVRAM.

sysExcMsg

The value of **sysExcMsg** should be initialized at compile time to **EXC_MSG_ADRS**, which is set to a default value in **configAll.h**.

```
char *sysExcMsg
```

When there is a serious or catastrophic problem during the boot process, the system puts error messages at the location specified by **sysExcMsg**. This memory can then be examined from an external agent such as the **bootrom** image, or with an on-chip debugger.

sysFlags

The **sysFlags** variable holds the boot flags, which control factors such as whether to perform an autoboot or whether to use TFTP as the boot device.

```
int sysFlags; /* boot flags */
```

This variable is used extensively by **bootrom**. The value of **sysFlags** is initialized in **usrConfig.c**.

hcfDeviceList[]

The **hcfDeviceList[]** array holds information about static hardware configuration. Each record contains the name of the device, a counter for the device (in other words, a unit number), the type of bus on which the device resides, which is typically PLB (using the preprocessor macro **VXB_BUSID_PLB**), a pointer to another table containing configuration data specific to the device, and the number of entries in the configuration data table.

hcfDeviceNum

The **hcfDeviceNum** contains a count of the number of devices represented in **hcfDeviceList[]**.

devUnitCfgData[]

The *devUnitCfgData[]* tables hold configuration information specific to a single device. These data are kept in records containing three fields: the name of the

configuration datum, the data type of the configuration datum (which can be integer, string, or address/pointer), and the value.

2.3.4 Required Routines

The following routines must be present in your BSP. Failure to provide any of these routines results in unresolved references at link time.

sysBspRev()	returns the BSP version and revision number
sysClkConnect()	connects a routine to the system clock interrupt
sysClkDisable()	turns off system clock interrupts
sysClkEnable()	turns on system clock interrupts
sysClkInt()	handles system clock interrupts
sysClkRateGet()	gets the system clock rate
sysClkRateSet()	sets the system clock rate
sysHwInit()	initializes the system hardware to a quiescent state
sysHwInit2()	initializes and configures additional system hardware
sysMemTop()	gets the address of the top of physical memory
sysModel()	returns the model name of the target system board
sysNvRamGet()	gets the contents of non-volatile RAM
sysNvRamSet()	sets the contents of non-volatile RAM
sysSerialChanGet()	gets the SIO_CHAN device associated with a serial channel
sysSerialHwInit()	initializes the BSP serial device(s) to a quiescent state
sysSerialHwInit2()	connects BSP serial device interrupts
sysToMonitor()	transfers control to the ROM monitor

At the beginning of the development process, the required routines are very simple. In most cases, these routines are expanded over the course of the development effort. The following pages describe the initial code for each required routine, and the file in which it is usually included.

sysBspRev()

The routine **sysBspRev()** is identical in all BSPs. This routine can be taken directly from the reference or template BSP and does not require modification.

Timer Driver Routines

Timer driver routines include the following:

```
sysClkConnect()  
sysClkDisable()  
sysClkEnable()  
sysClkInt()  
sysClkRateGet()  
sysClkRateSet()
```

There are several timer drivers provided by Wind River. Files for these drivers are located in the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/timer* directory. If one of the existing timer drivers works for your target board, your **sysLib.c** file can simply include the appropriate file from the **timer** directory. For example, the MIPS R4000 processor includes an on-chip timer. This timer driver is provided in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/timer/mipsR4kTimer.c*. If your board uses this processor, your **sysLib.c** file can include the driver as follows:

```
#include "timer/mipsR4kTimer.c" /* system timer */
```

In some cases, you may need to include both a header file from *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/h/drv/timer* and a source file from *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/timer*. Check the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/h/drv/timer* directory to see whether a header file for your driver is available.

If a standard timer driver is not provided for your target hardware, you may be able to copy an existing timer driver file to the BSP directory and make minor modifications. If you do this, it is wise to change the file name and routine names to avoid confusion. For example, some BSPs for ARM processors started with the **ambaTimer.c** file and renamed it as the **ixm1200Timer.c** file. Be sure to document the name of the original driver in the source file.

In rare situations, you may need to create a custom **sysTimer.c** file. If this is the case for your BSP, you can copy routine prototypes for the **sysClk*()** routines from any of the existing timer drivers in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/timer*.

sysMemTop()

The **sysMemTop()** routine returns the address of the top of VxWorks memory. During early BSP development, the **sysMemTop()** routine in **sysLib.c** simply returns a constant value based on **LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS**, **LOCAL_MEM_SIZE**, **PM_RESERVED_MEM** (VxWorks 6.x only), and **USER_RESERVED_MEM**.

In most implementations, **sysMemTop()** calls **sysPhysMemTop()** to obtain the address at the top of physical memory (for more information, see [sysPhysMemTop\(\)](#), p.38). Later, during BSP cleanup, the **sysPhysMemTop()** routine can be enhanced to allow automatic memory sizing.

The following is a macro-controlled version of **sysMemTop()** that can be used by any BSP to support fixed memory size:

```

/*****
 *
 * sysMemTop - get the address of the top of VxWorks memory
 *
 * This routine returns a pointer to the first byte of memory not
 * controlled or used by VxWorks.
 *
 * The user can reserve memory space by defining the macro USER_RESERVED_MEM
 * in config.h. This routine returns the address of the reserved memory
 * area. The value of USER_RESERVED_MEM is in bytes.
 *
 * RETURNS: The address of the top of VxWorks memory.
 */

char *sysMemTop
(
    void
)
{
    static char * memTop = NULL;

    if ( memTop == NULL )
    {
        memTop = sysPhysMemTop () - USER_RESERVED_MEM;

#ifdef INCLUDE_EDR_PM
        /* account for ED&R persistent memory */

        memTop = memTop - PM_RESERVED_MEM;
#endif
    }

    return memTop ;
}

```

sysPhysMemTop()

The **sysPhysMemTop()** routine in **sysLib.c** returns the address of the top of physical memory. This routine is required for VxWorks 6.x BSPs and, although it is not strictly required for VxWorks 5.5 BSPs, it is included in most. This routine can be enhanced to allow automatic memory sizing.

```
/*
 *
 * sysPhysMemTop - get the address of the top of physical memory
 *
 * This routine returns the address of the first missing byte of memory,
 * which indicates the top of memory.
 *
 * Normally, the user specifies the amount of physical memory with the
 * macro LOCAL_MEM_SIZE in config.h. BSPs that support run-time
 * memory sizing do so only if the macro LOCAL_MEM_AUTOSIZE is defined.
 * If not defined, then LOCAL_MEM_SIZE is assumed to be, and must be, the
 * true size of physical memory.
 *
 * NOTE: Do not adjust LOCAL_MEM_SIZE to reserve memory for application
 * use. See sysMemTop() for more information on reserving memory.
 *
 * RETURNS: The address of the top of physical memory.
 *
 * ERRNO
 *
 * SEE ALSO: sysMemTop()
 */

char * sysPhysMemTop (void)
{
    LOCAL char * physTop = NULL;

    if (physTop == NULL)
    {
        physTop = (char *) (LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS + LOCAL_MEM_SIZE);
    }

    return (physTop) ;
}
```

sysModel()

The **sysModel()** routine in **sysLib.c** returns a string pointing to the model number of the board. For simple BSPs, this routine returns a constant string. If the BSP supports multiple board models, **sysModel()** requires a method to distinguish between boards to determine which of the related strings to use. The following is a simple example:


```
/******  
*  
* sysModel - return the model name of the CPU board  
*  
* This routine returns the model name of the CPU board.  
*  
* RETURNS: A pointer to the string.  
*/  
  
char * sysModel (void)  
{  
    return (SYS_MODEL);  
}
```

NVRAM Routines

The `sysNvRamSet()` and `sysNvRamGet()` routines can be provided initially by `nullNvRam.c`, which is included from `sysLib.c`. Later, during BSP cleanup, the appropriate standard version (available in `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/mem`) should be used or a custom version should be created.

Hardware Initialization Routines

Hardware initialization routines include the following:

```
sysHwInit()  
sysHwInit2()  
sysSerialHwInit()  
sysSerialHwInit2()
```

You must create these custom routines. However, during initial development, empty stubs can be used.

When you are ready to add these routines, check the reference BSP to see how it handles devices that are common to your board. However, you must be sure to add code to quiesce *all* devices on your board, including those that are not present on the reference board. Otherwise, you may encounter problems once interrupts are enabled.

The cache initialization routines, including the routines to initialize L2 cache, should be called from `sysHwInit()`. The requirement is that these routines must be called before `cacheEnable()` during the boot process. For more information, see [3.3.5 Enabling Cache and MMU Devices](#), p.81.

sysSerialChanGet()

The **sysSerialChanGet()** routine in **sysSerial.c** returns the per-port **SIO_CHAN** structure required for each serial I/O (SIO) device. For more information, see [Multi-Mode Serial \(SIO\) Drivers](#), p.111. If a fixed number of SIO devices are supported, this routine returns a pointer to a statically allocated structure. The following is a sample for a generic BSP supporting exactly two serial devices:

```
LOCAL SIO_CHAN boardSccChan1;
LOCAL SIO_CHAN boardSccChan2;

/*****
 *
 * sysSerialChanGet - get the SIO_CHAN device associated with a serial channel
 *
 * This routine gets the SIO_CHAN device associated with a specified serial
 * channel.
 *
 * RETURNS: A pointer to the SIO_CHAN structure for the channel, or ERROR
 * if the channel is invalid.
 */

SIO_CHAN * sysSerialChanGet
(
    int channel          /* serial channel */
)
{
    if (channel == 0)
        return ((SIO_CHAN *) &boardSccChan1);
    else if (channel == 1)
        return ((SIO_CHAN *) &boardSccChan2);
    else
        return ((SIO_CHAN *) ERROR);
}
```

sysToMonitor()

The **sysToMonitor()** routine in **sysLib.c** is called to reboot the system when **ctrl+x** is pressed on the console keyboard or, on some systems, when certain processor errors occur at interrupt level. When **sysToMonitor()** hands control over to the boot monitor, the system must be set to a state where no interrupts occur; failure to do this causes the reboot to fail. The following template can be used as a starting point. However, the **TO BE DONE** sections must be replaced by code that performs the stated operations.

```
/******  
*  
* sysToMonitor - transfer control to the ROM monitor  
*  
* This routine transfers control to the ROM monitor. Normally, it is called  
* only by reboot()--which services ^X--and bus errors at interrupt level.  
* However, in some circumstances, the user may wish to introduce a  
* <startType> to enable special boot ROM facilities.  
*  
* RETURNS: Does not return.  
*/  
  
STATUS sysToMonitor  
(  
    int startType      /* parameter passed to ROM to tell it how to boot */  
)  
{  
    /* Warm reboot address */  
    /* NOTE: the address to use here is processor-dependent */  
    FUNCPTR pRom = (FUNCPTR) (ROM_TEXT_ADRS + some offset);  
  
    /* lock interrupts */  
    intCpuLock();  
  
    /* disable processor-level cache */  
    cacheDisable(INSTRUCTION_CACHE);  
    cacheDisable(DATA_CACHE);  
  
    /* disable board-level cache */  
    /* TO BE DONE */  
  
    /* disable aux clock, if one is provided by the BSP */  
    /* TO BE DONE */  
  
    /* disable local devices on the board, e.g. serial devices */  
    /* TO BE DONE */  
  
    /* reset the serial device */  
    sysSerialReset();  
  
    /* set processor state to reasonable value */  
    /* TO BE DONE */  
  
    /* jump to bootrom entry point */  
    (*pRom) (startType);  
  
    /* in case we ever continue from ROM monitor */  
    return (OK);  
}
```

A template for this routine is also available in the template BSP for your architecture, and examples are available in the reference BSPs included with your installation. However, you are encouraged to review the above template, as functionality in the template and reference BSPs may be incomplete.

2.3.5 Required Macros

BSP macros are defined in either **Makefile** or **config.h**, with some macros defined in both files. The following macros are required for all BSPs unless otherwise specified:

CPU (defined in **Makefile**)

The target CPU, which must be the same as for the reference BSP.

CPU_VARIANT

The target CPU variant (for example, **_bcm125x** for MIPS Broadcom devices).

This macro is not required for all architectures. For more information, see the *VxWorks Architecture Supplement* for your target processor.

TOOL (defined in **Makefile**)

The host tool chain (for example, **diab**), which must be the same as in the reference BSP. Most BSPs support both the Wind River Compiler (**diab**) and the Wind River GNU Compiler (**gnu**).

TGT_DIR (defined in **Makefile**)

The path to the target directory. The default is *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target*.

TARGET_DIR (defined in **Makefile**)

The BSP directory name.

VENDOR (defined in **Makefile**)

The name of the target board manufacturer.

BOARD (defined in **Makefile**)

The target board name.

ROM_TEXT_ADRS (defined in **Makefile** and **config.h**)

The boot ROM entry address in hexadecimal notation. For most target systems, this is set to the beginning of the flash address area. However, there may be some hardware configurations that use an area at the start of flash for the reset vector. In this case, the address is offset accordingly.

The offset is typically architecture-dependent. Therefore, the low-order bytes of this macro can be copied from a reference BSP.

ROM_LINK_ADRS (optional, defined in **Makefile** and **config.h**)

If used, this macro specifies the boot ROM link address in hexadecimal form. For most boards, it is set to the beginning of the flash address area. If this address is present, the linker uses it to link the boot ROM image. Otherwise, **ROM_TEXT_ADRS** is used as the link address.

ROM_WARM_ADRS

(optional, defined in both **Makefile** and **config.h**, or in either)

The boot ROM warm boot entry address in hexadecimal form. This is usually a fixed offset beyond the cold boot entry point, **ROM_TEXT_ADRS**. The offset is architecture-dependent, and can be obtained from the reference BSP or from the **bcopyLong()** or **copyLong()** call in **bootInit.c** (located in the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/all* directory). If **ROM_WARM_ADRS** is defined, the code in **sysToMonitor()** does an explicit jump to **ROM_WARM_ADRS** when a switch to the hardware ROM code is desired.

ROM_SIZE (defined in **Makefile** and **config.h**)

The flash area size in hexadecimal notation.

RAM_LOW_ADRS and RAM_HIGH_ADRS (defined in **Makefile** and **config.h**)

RAM_LOW_ADRS is the address at which VxWorks is loaded.

RAM_HIGH_ADRS is the destination address used when copying the boot ROM image to RAM.



NOTE: **RAM_LOW_ADRS** and **RAM_HIGH_ADRS** are absolute addresses, typically chosen to be at an architecture-specific offset from the start of DRAM. For information on the normal VxWorks memory layout, see the memory layout diagram in the appropriate *VxWorks Architecture Supplement*.

HEX_FLAGS (defined in **Makefile**)

Defines the architecture-specific flags for the **objcopy** utility that generates S-record files.

MACH_EXTRA (defined in **Makefile**)

Defines any extra machine-dependent files. In early development, make this an empty declaration.

BSP_VER_1_1 (defined in **config.h**)

BSP_VER_1_2 (defined in **config.h**)

BSP_VERSION (defined in **config.h**)

BSP_REV (defined in **config.h**)

These macros indicate the version and revision numbers for the BSP. The version number indicates which version of VxWorks can be used with the BSP. A value of **1.2** for **BSP_VERSION** indicates that the BSP is intended for use with VxWorks 5.4 or VxWorks 5.5 (Tornado 2.x). A value of **2.0** indicates a BSP that is intended for use with VxWorks 6.x. If **BSP_VER_1_1** is defined with a value of **1**, it indicates that the BSP is backward-compatible with VxWorks 5.4 (Tornado 1.0.1).

These macros must be defined before the **configAll.h** file is included. Note that **BSP_VERSION** and **BSP_REV** should contain strings.



NOTE: The BSP version and revision must be included in the BSP README file as well as in the **config.h** file. The definitions in these two files must agree.

LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS (defined in **config.h**)

The start of the on-board memory area.

LOCAL_MEM_AUTOSIZE or **LOCAL_MEM_SIZE** (defined in **config.h**)

Only one of these two macros is defined for a given BSP.

If defined, **LOCAL_MEM_SIZE** defines the fixed (static) memory size.

If defined, **LOCAL_MEM_AUTOSIZE** indicates that the BSP determines the actual memory size when booting, and that no static size is assumed.

ROM_BASE_ADRS (defined in **config.h**)

The ROM start address in hexadecimal form.

ROM_WARM_ADRS (defined in **config.h**)

The warm boot entry address. This is usually defined as an offset from **ROM_TEXT_ADRS**.

USER_RESERVED_MEM (defined in **config.h**)

Size (in bytes) of the memory region reserved for application use. For more information, see *Wind River Technical Note #41*. The default value is 0 for all BSPs.

VMA_START (optional, defined in **Makefile**)

This macro is used for creating hex files (for example, **bootrom.hex**). The default value is 0x00000000. If defined, it should be a hex address with a leading 0x. In some BSPs, this macro is defined as follows:

```
VMA_START = 0x$(ROM_TEXT_ADRS)
```

NUM_TTY (defined in **config.h**)

The number of TTY ports to be configured at boot time. The default value is 2.



NOTE: Unless otherwise specified, the hexadecimal addresses in the macros in **Makefile** must *not* include a leading 0x. The copies in **config.h** must include the leading 0x.

Some additional architecture-specific macros may also be required in the makefile. For example, the i960 architecture must be instructed as to where to link the initial

boot record. For architecture-specific information, see the appropriate *VxWorks Architecture Supplement* and the *VxWorks Hardware Considerations Guide*.

2.3.6 Optional Routines

Most BSPs provide routines beyond those that are required. Typically, an auxiliary clock and a serial port are provided. In addition, some kind of Ethernet interface is supported. Other hardware is often made available as well. Descriptions of the routines required to support these hardware features are included in the [3.3.9 Providing Additional Optional Device Support](#), p.106, and in the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide*.

2.3.7 Hardware Considerations

There are a number of hardware issues that relate to BSP development. For the most part, these issues are more relevant during board design than during BSP development. However, some BSP issues must be addressed. If the design of your target hardware is not already in place, it is worthwhile to ensure that the hardware is designed in a way that simplifies BSP development. For more information regarding target board design and VxWorks, see the *VxWorks Hardware Considerations Guide*.

When developing a BSP, you must know how the boot type is passed to **romStart()**. This depends on the processor architecture, but is generally passed either in a register or on the stack. If the boot type is passed in a register, the register is determined by the C function calling convention for your processor. If it is passed on the stack, the stack is usually placed such that it begins before the text section and grows in the opposite direction.

A bank of LED indicators that can be used without any hardware initialization is a good feature to have in your target hardware. The first stage in BSP development should always be to write, test, and debug code that can set, clear, and modify the LEDs. This is the case even if an on-chip debugging (OCD) device, or another type of hardware debugger, is available.

Most boards use dynamic memory for the main bank of RAM, rather than static memory. When dynamic memory is used, a memory controller is required in order to provide memory refresh cycles. The memory controller must be initialized very early during system initialization, usually before any C code is run. For this reason, it is customary to write the memory controller initialization code in assembly, to be

linked with the boot ROM image. For more information, see the memory controller section of the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide*.

2.4 The Development Environment

The development environment consists of a mechanism to build an object module, a method to download the image to the target, and a mechanism for testing the downloaded code. It includes several items: a hardware debugger (if you use one), Workbench, a compiler and other development tools, and a means of downloading VxWorks images for debugging.



NOTE: A hardware debugger, such as an on-chip debugging (OCD) system, is a good investment and is generally considered a requirement for efficient BSP development.

When porting a BSP, it is usually best to start with a debugging method that includes some simple test code rather than a full-blown VxWorks image. For example, if your board has LEDs, the first code you write may be the code to turn the LEDs on and off. By starting with this simple kind of code, you can verify the development environment in addition to creating a routine that is useful later in the BSP development process.

The development environment also includes compilers, linkers, and OS library files. The BSP provides board-specific functionality, and the BSP routines often depend on OS routines that are not normally provided by Wind River in source form. Object modules for these routines are provided in a library file in the VxWorks installation. The old VxWorks library naming convention was that libraries were named **libCPU_{TOOL}vx.a**, where *CPU* is the CPU architecture of your board, and *TOOL* is the toolchain you are using to build your BSP. An example of an older library is **libPPC860gnuvx.a**.

Starting with VxWorks 5.5, the library files are split up into several different files. The **libCPU_{TOOL}vx.a** files are still present as of VxWorks 5.5, but they are stubs only. The new files are kept in subdirectories under the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/lib* directory, named *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/lib/ARCH/CPU/TOOL* and *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/lib/ARCH/CPU/common*, where *CPU* and *TOOL* are as described above, and *ARCH* is the abbreviation for the processor architecture family. For example, PowerPC libraries for use with the Diab C/C++

Compiler toolchain with the 860 processor are in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/lib/ppc/PPC860/diab* and *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/lib/ppc/PPC860/common*. Several library files are kept in these two directories; each library file contains object modules for individual components.

In VxWorks 6.x, processor variants have been eliminated. For example, all PowerPC processors are now indicated using **PPC32**. For more information, see the appropriate *VxWorks Architecture Supplement*.

2.4.1 BSP Debugging Methods

Part of setting up your development environment is choosing a BSP debugging method. This section provides an overview of the hardware debugging options available to a BSP developer. For more detailed information, see [4. Debugging Your BSP](#).

Primitive Tools

For most of the early work of porting a BSP, the system is not initialized enough to use a host-based debugger, a target-based debugger, **logMsg()**, or **printf()** to obtain debugging information. Therefore, some method of low-level debugging must be selected.

A BSP developer can begin porting a BSP with no more debugging information than what is provided by an LED that can be turned on or off under software control. Later in the development process, a polled-mode serial output routine, possibly called **printf()**, can be created to print complex diagnostic information to the serial console.

Another debugging method consists of writing information to non-volatile RAM (NVRAM). This information can be displayed using another computer at a later time and can be used to obtain information about the state of the target processor.

Both of the above methods are considered primitive. Other methods are generally available to make the port easier and faster.

Native Debug ROMs

In some cases, the board manufacturer provides flash software that can be used to help debug the VxWorks BSP. To be useful, a ROM monitor must have breakpoint support. It is also helpful to have a mechanism by which to download the image.

An example of a debug ROM is **ppcbug**, which is provided by Motorola.

ROM Emulator

A ROM emulator is a device that plugs into a ROM socket on your target system and emulates the behavior of a ROM part.

From the target system, this device functions as a ROM (with a possible difference in timing behavior). From the development host, a ROM emulator allows you to see every transaction visible to the ROM; typically, either all accesses to memory or all accesses to ROM. At a minimum, this device allows you to see what instructions are being executed during the initial phases of the boot sequence.

A ROM emulator eliminates the need to program flash devices and may allow you to see the steps of program execution. However, it does not allow access to the processor registers. A ROM emulator can be used in conjunction with LED or **printf()** debugging (see *Primitive Tools*, p.47). Note that this combination is better than either method by itself.

On-Chip Debugging (OCD) Devices

For BSP debugging, a hardware debugger is often a better solution than any of the basic tools presented above. Many modern processors provide a debug bus that allows access by external debugging hardware to useful processor information such as register values, interrupt mask, and other aspects of the processor's internal state. One example of this type of interface is the JTAG port available on many ARM, Intel XScale, ColdFire, PowerPC, MIPS, and other processors. OCD devices, such as the Wind River ICE SX, can access this port. This access allows you to begin debugging much earlier in the BSP development process.

An OCD device provides access to the target processor's registers, which allows you to start using the OCD before any VxWorks initialization code is written. In fact, this type of tool is often used to determine how the initialization code must set specific processor configuration registers.

During development, the OCD is used like a standard software debugger—that is, it is used to trace and modify program execution, examine and sometimes modify register contents, set breakpoints, and so forth. In addition, the OCD can be used to program flash devices, which saves time each time a new version of the BSP under development must be tested.

Additional development time can be saved when both the target board development team and the BSP development team have access to an OCD device. In this case, each team has access to the same information about what is happening on the target board. This greatly reduces uncertainty about the cause of the problem and whether it is attributable to hardware or software.



NOTE: Some OCD-based debuggers assert the non-maskable interrupt (NMI) line to obtain access to the processor. This can cause the processor to fail in an unpredictable manner, seemingly independent of the code that you are trying to debug. Check with your OCD device vendor to see if this is the case for your debugger. For more information on non-maskable interrupts, see [2.5.6 Using Non-Maskable Interrupts](#), p.56.

Logic Analyzer

A logic analyzer is a device regularly used during hardware development. If the BSP development and hardware development are closely coupled, the logic analyzer used to develop the hardware can also be used to assist in writing the BSP. However, it is rarely cost-effective to purchase an additional logic analyzer purely for BSP development purposes.

If a logic analyzer is used for BSP development, the processor must be configured in such a way that it always puts address requests to the external bus. This configuration may not be required by the hardware developers.

In some situations, an oscilloscope may also be useful for BSP development, especially when the BSP and hardware are developed in parallel.

In-Circuit Emulator

An in-circuit emulator replaces the target processor with an external device that emulates the processor. In-circuit emulators are not available for all processor and architecture types. If an in-circuit emulator is available for your target processor, it can be used for debugging during BSP development.

An in-circuit emulator provides all the advantages of an on-chip debugging (OCD) device and may include additional features and abilities beyond the OCD capabilities.

The disadvantages of an in-circuit emulator include cost and limited processor support. However, for processors with no OCD interface capability, an in-circuit emulator is sometimes the only viable solution for finding and fixing certain problems.

Like a logic analyzer, an in-circuit emulator is generally not cost-effective for BSP development alone.

2.4.2 WDB Debugging Interface

When no hardware debugger is available, try to minimize the amount of time during which you do not have access to the Wind River development tools, particularly the Wind debug target agent (WDB agent). Because the WDB agent is linked to the kernel, it can share initialization code with the kernel. Thus, after the initialization code has run, you can start either the WDB agent, the VxWorks kernel, or both.

The VxWorks WDB agent provides a powerful debugging environment and, if an OCD device is not available, it is possible to use the WDB agent for BSP debugging.



NOTE: Wind River BSP developers rarely use the WDB agent for debugging. However, when no OCD device, ROM emulator, or in-circuit emulator is available, the WDB agent is a good choice.

Using the WDB agent, you can debug the VxWorks image to which it is linked. The target agent's linked-in approach has several advantages over the older approach of using a ROM monitor (see *Native Debug ROMs*, p.48). For example:

- There is only one initialization code module to write. In a traditional ROM-monitor approach, you must write two initialization code modules: one for the monitor and one for the OS. In addition, the traditional approach requires non-standard modifications to resolve contention issues over MMU, vector table, and device initialization.
- The code size is smaller because VxWorks and the target agent can share generic library routines such as `memcpy()`.
- Traditional ROM monitors debug only in *system mode*. The entire OS is debugged as a single thread. The WDB agent provides, in addition to system mode, a fully VxWorks-aware tasking mode. This mode allows debugging

selected parts of the OS (such as individual tasks), without affecting the rest of the system.

- Because the Wind River development tools let you download and execute code dynamically, you can download extensions and use the WDB agent to debug the extensions. The downloadable extensions include application code, new drivers, extra hardware initialization code, and so on.

How you download the WDB agent and the VxWorks kernel depends on your phase of development. When writing and debugging the board initialization code, you must create your own download path. This is an advantage over the traditional ROM-monitor approach, in which you must create the download path for porting the monitor itself.

After you have the board initialization code working, how you proceed depends on the speed of your download path. If you have a fast download path, continue to use it for further kernel development. This is a advantage over the traditional ROM monitor approach that often forces you to use a serial-line download path. If you have a slow download path, you can burn the kernel into ROM, as well as the agent and as much generic VxWorks code as fits.

2.4.3 Workbench Libraries and Tools

When porting a VxWorks BSP, it is necessary to have the VxWorks libraries that come with a Wind River Workbench installation. The Workbench installation also provides header files, a compiler and other tools, and the framework for BSP development. Also, a BSP is not considered complete until bootable projects are tested and available.

2.4.4 Compiler and Tool Choice

When porting a BSP, there are often several choices of compilers available. At least one compiler is always available with Workbench, and that compiler is usually the best choice. However, there are often other choices available, either from Wind River or from third parties.

Whichever compiler is used, it must satisfy the following requirements:

- It must be available to all users of the BSP.
- It must be able to read and understand the VxWorks library format and object module format (OMF).

- It must be able to generate code that works with the debugger, if any, that is to be used for BSP development. It should also work with the debuggers that will be used during application development.
- It must not generate code that silently performs certain activities such as memory allocation. For example, no BSP code or driver code should be written using C++ because the C++ compiler does silent memory allocation to allocate constructors, as well as other tasks that are not available until after the OS is completely booted or that cannot be done during ISR execution.

Also keep in mind that the BSP is recompiled often, and that the BSP may be compiled with a different compiler than the one that is used for development. For portability, it is wise to insure that the compiler is used with the most stringent options available, such as the **-ansi -pedantic** flags of the GNU compiler. For more information, see *Wind River Coding Conventions*.

To find out what compiler and linker flags are required, go to your reference BSP and build one of the standard VxWorks image types. Typically, this is **vxWorks** (a RAM image) or **vxWorks.res_rom_nosym** (a flash image).

There are also ancillary tools, such as an archiver, disassembler, linker, binary file dump program, and so on. These tools should be available as part of the package that the compiler comes with or as part of the debugger. If the package that is chosen is missing a tool, a compatible version of that tool may be available from some other source. For example, if a program to display object module symbols is missing, you can use the **nmarch** program (**nmppc** or **nmarm**, for example) that is part of Workbench.

2.4.5 Download Path

The following are some of the more common techniques for downloading code to the target during BSP development:

- Use the download protocol supplied in the board vendor's debug ROMs. The drawback of this approach is that downloading is often slow. The advantage is that it is easy to set up.
- Program the image into ROM. This allows code to be put onto the target, but does not allow any mechanism for debugging other than the LED or **printf()** routines (see *Primitive Tools*, p.47). However, debugging the LED or **printf()** routines is extremely difficult if this is the download mechanism.
- Use a ROM emulator (such as NetROM from AMC). The drawback of this approach is that it can take time for you to learn how to use the tool. The

advantages include fast download times, portability to most boards, and a communication protocol that lets debugging messages pass from the target to the host through the ROM socket. For more information on ROM emulators, see *ROM Emulator*, p.48).

- Use an OCD device (see *On-Chip Debugging (OCD) Devices*, p.48). This allows you to single-step through much of the initialization code.
- Use an ICE (see *In-Circuit Emulator*, p.49). The main drawbacks of this approach include a high procurement cost and a lack of availability for all processors. However, it does let you single-step through the initialization code and can significantly improve a product's time to market.
- Use the WDB agent (see *2.4.2 WDB Debugging Interface*, p.50). Once the WDB agent is available, many parts of BSP initialization can be downloaded and tested while running. In addition to a fast, efficient download path, this gives you access to the Wind River tools, including the full capabilities of the debugger.

After you have downloaded code to the target, examine memory or ROM to make sure your code is loaded in the right place. The GNU tools `nmarch` and `objdumparch`, supplied by Wind River, can be used on your compiled images to see what should be in the target memory. When reviewing this information, give special attention to the start addresses of the text and data segments.

2.5 Common Problems

Most of the problems listed in this section are the result of doing the right thing in the wrong place or at the wrong time. Context is important. To avoid introducing problems into your BSP, examine your reference BSP carefully *before* starting your development and ensure that the reference BSP developer did not make the following mistakes.

2.5.1 Failing to Include LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS

Many BSP writers assume that `LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS` is zero and fail to include it in macros that must be offset by the start of memory.

For example, the routine `sysPhysMemTop()` indicates the highest addressable memory present on the system. If autosizing is not used, such as during early parts of BSP development, this routine can be written to return a constant value. This value should be relative to `LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS`, for example:

```
char * sysPhysMemTop()
{
    return ((char *) (LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS + LOCAL_MEM_SIZE));
}
```

Most BSP developers do not change the value of `LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS`, so this problem tends to be copied and replicated throughout development projects.

2.5.2 Providing Too Much Device Initialization in `romInit.s`

Many BSP writers add too much device initialization code to `romInit.s`. Treat the initialization in `romInit.s` as a preliminary step only. All real device initialization should be handled in `sysHwInit()` in `sysLib.c`.

Many embedded devices have a requirement for a very fast boot time. Developers working on such projects must ensure that the system boots quickly. This is usually achieved by removing initialization routines entirely, or by delaying the initialization until later in the boot process. Typically, efforts to minimize boot time do not require changes to `romInit.s`. However, if `romInit.s` includes too much initialization code, modification may be necessary.

2.5.3 Providing Insufficient Initialization in `sysALib.s`

Many BSP writers assume that any initialization done in `romInit.s` need only be done once. However, all initialization done by `romInit.s` should be repeated in the routine `sysInit()` in `sysALib.s`. If the initialization is not repeated, the BSP user must rebuild boot ROMs for simple configuration changes in their VxWorks image.

There are some kinds of initialization that do not need to be performed in `sysALib.s`, though these exceptions are limited. In most cases, the exceptions are limited to one of two situations. One kind of initialization that does not need to be done in `sysALib.s` is configuration of processor or board registers that can only be written once after initial power-on and that retain their original value regardless of subsequent attempts to change them. The other situation involves initialization that must be done in order for the code in `sysALib.s` to execute; for example, certain parts of memory controller initialization must be performed first.

2.5.4 Locating Modified Drivers in the Wrong Directory



NOTE: The recommended practice for adding third-party drivers is different for VxBus model drivers and legacy model drivers. This section discusses the recommended method for legacy device drivers. For information on adding third-party drivers for VxBus model device drivers, see *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide (Vol. 1): Driver Release Procedure*.

BSP writers frequently modify Wind River device drivers, as well as provide their own drivers. These BSP-specific drivers must be delivered in BSP-specific directories and not in the Wind River directories *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv* and *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/h/drv*. BSP-specific code belongs in the BSP-specific directory *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname*. Modifying code in the Wind River directories can have very adverse effects for customers using multiple BSPs from different sources. The generic directories should contain only the original code provided by Wind River.

2.5.5 Including Confusing Configuration Options

In the **config.h** file, the user should be presented with clear choices for configuring the BSP. Material that cannot be configured by the user should not be in **config.h**, but should be placed in *bspname.h* instead.

In addition, the user should not have to compute values to be typed into **config.h**. Instead, there should be macros for manipulation of the relevant data. For example, if a register must be loaded with the high 12 bits of an address, the user should only be required to enter the full address. Even better would be for the user to enter the name of a symbol or macro that refers to the address. The code, either the compiler's preprocessor or the configuration code that is part of the BSP, should do the computation of the value to load in the register.

The following examples illustrate correct configuration options:

```
/* Division Factor of BRGCLK shift, specified in hardware docs */
#define SCCR_DFBRG_SHIFT 0x000c
#define BRGCLK_DIV_FACTOR 4
/* set the BRGCLK division factor */
* SCCR(immrVal) = (* SCCR(immrVal) & ~SCCR_DFBRG_MSK) |
  (BRGCLK_DIV_FACTOR << SCCR_DFBRG_SHIFT);
```

Correct example 2:

```
#define BRGCLK_FREQ (SPLL_FREQ / ( 1 << (2 * BRGCLK_DIV_FACTOR)))
ppc860Chan [i].clockRate = BRGCLK_FREQ;
```

Correct example 3:

```
lis    r6, HIADJ(ROM_TEXT_ADRS)    /* load r6 with the address */
addi   r6, r6, LO(ROM_TEXT_ADRS)   /* of ROM_TEXT_ADRS */
```

The following examples show incorrect configuration options:

```
/* WRONG: DO NOT use a magic number in assembly source code! */
* SCCR(immrVal) = (* SCCR(immrVal) & ~SCCR_DFBRG_MSK) | 0x4000);
```

Incorrect example 2:

```
/* WRONG: DO NOT use a magic number in C source code! */
ppc860Chan [i].clockRate = 0x16e3600;
```

Incorrect example 3:

```
/* WRONG: DO NOT use a magic number in assembly source! */
lis    r6, 0    /* load r6 with the address */
addi   r6, r6, 0 /* of ROM_TEXT_ADRS */
```

Incorrect example 4:

```
/* WRONG: DO NOT define a macro as a magic number! */
#define BRGCLK_RATE 0x16e3600
ppc860Chan [i].clockRate = BRGCLK_RATE;
```

Incorrect example 5:

```
/* WRONG: DO NOT assume the high-order bits are zero! */
lis    r6, 0    /* load r6 with the address */
addi   r6, r6, LO(ROM_TEXT_ADRS) /* of ROM_TEXT_ADRS */
```

2.5.6 Using Non-Maskable Interrupts

Because the kernel lacks interrupts to protect its data structures while they are being updated, using *non-maskable interrupts* (NMI) should be avoided. If an NMI interrupt service routine (ISR) makes a call to VxWorks that results in a kernel object being changed, protection is lost and undesirable behavior can be expected. For more information on ISRs at high interrupt levels, see the *VxWorks Kernel Programmer's Guide*.

Also, note that a VxWorks routine marked as interrupt safe does not mean it is NMI interrupt safe. On the contrary, many routines marked as interrupt safe are actually unsafe for NMI.

On some architectures, the use of NMI cannot be tolerated for anything other than rebooting the target or permanently halting the target in order to retrieve the contents of memory. For example, on PowerPC, if an NMI occurs while certain sections of code are being executed, information about the return address is

irrevocably lost. In this case, the processor is never able to return from the NMI ISR to that previously running code, regardless of the action taken by the NMI ISR.

3

Porting a BSP to Custom Hardware

- 3.1 Introduction 59
- 3.2 Getting a Default Kernel Running 60
- 3.3 Finalizing Your BSP 78

3.1 Introduction

This chapter describes the BSP porting process in detail. Before beginning this process, be sure your development environment is set up and properly configured. You should also have a basic understanding of how VxWorks is initialized.

Creating a new BSP using the Wind River tools requires that you handle the development in graduated steps, each building on the previous, as follows:

1. Set up your development environment. For more information, see [2.4 The Development Environment](#), p.46.
2. Write the BSP pre-kernel-initialization code. This includes board initialization, memory initialization, and an LED driver (if applicable).
3. Start a minimal VxWorks kernel and add the basic drivers for an interrupt controller, timers, and serial devices.
4. Start the target agent and connect the Wind River development tools.

5. Complete the BSP. This can include adding support for buses, networking, boot ROMs, SCSI, caches, MMU initialization, and direct memory access (DMA).
6. Generate a default project for use with the project facility.

The goal of this procedure is not only to create a new BSP, but also to minimize the time during which you do not have access to the Wind River development tools—in particular, the Wind Debug target agent (WDB agent). Because the WDB agent is linked to the kernel, it can share initialization code with the kernel. Thus, after the initialization code has run, you can start either the WDB agent, the VxWorks kernel, or both.

3.2 Getting a Default Kernel Running

During the initial phases of BSP development, command-line tools are used to build the code. No Wind River tools are available. A good early step in the development process is to write simple code that helps to verify that the CPU is working, making later debugging easier.

Your initial strategy might be to create a BSP directory and add the minimum required files. This includes the files specified in [2.3.1 Source and Include Files](#), p.23. You must also ensure that there are stubs for each of the routines described in [2.3.4 Required Routines](#), p.35.

Next, build your VxWorks image and verify that it contains the expected code at the proper locations. For more information on what can be done at this stage of the process, see [4. Debugging Your BSP](#). All of these steps can be done before hardware is available.

3.2.1 Initializing the Board

The first task that the BSP must accomplish is to initialize the board's registers to the point that the processor executes instructions correctly. Typically, some of this initialization is handled by the target hardware at power-up time. For example, as specified in [2.2.3 Architecture Considerations](#), p.16, MIPS processors use a `modeIn` pin to set the initial values of some processor registers. Other registers must be set

in `romInit()`. The selection of processor registers that must be set early in development depends on the processor family and your specific processor.

In addition to the minimum set of required processor registers, some board registers must be initialized. The selection of board control registers that must be set at this point is determined by the board design.

In most cases, the processor-specific requirements are to:

- Mask processor interrupts.
- Set the initial stack pointer to `STACK_ADRS` (defined in `configAll.h`).
- Disable processor caches.

3.2.2 Initializing Memory

Typically, the requirements for DRAM initialization include:

- wait states
- refresh rate
- chip-selects
- disabling secondary (L2) caches (if needed)

The code in `romInit.s` must initialize the processor and board control registers (BCRs), as well as the memory controller. Processor initialization on your board should be identical to the processor initialization in the reference BSP. You must modify the BCR initialization code provided by the reference BSP.

If your board does not use the same memory controller as the reference BSP, you may also need to write the memory controller initialization code. This code is often available from the memory controller vendor as assembly source code and can often be used without modification.

It is possible to use an OCD device to verify the values of the memory controller registers. Using the debugger, set the appropriate registers to the desired values and verify that RAM is readable and writable. Then use the working values to create the memory initialization routine `sysMemInit()`. For more information on OCD devices, see *On-Chip Debugging (OCD) Devices*, p.48.

3.2.3 Using Debug Routines in the Initialization Code

It is usually helpful to validate the development environment by writing code to turn the board LEDs on and off. This allows you to include debug code that can provide information about the state of the board initialization.

On a well-designed board, the LEDs are addressable without having too many processor or board registers configured and without very much additional bus configuration. The LED code should be simple. The following is an example of C source code for a simple LED system (you may also use LED code from your reference BSP):

```
/* sysLed.c - Wind River 8260 User LED driver */
/* Copyright 1984-2003 Wind River Systems, Inc. */

/*
modification history
-----
01a,30jul01,g_h created from T2 SBC8260/sysLib.c
*/
/*
DESCRIPTION
This module contains the LED driver.

INCLUDES: sysLed.h
*/

/* includes */
#include "vxWorks.h"
#include "wrSbc8260.h"
#include "sysLed.h"

#ifdef INCLUDE_SYSLED

/* locals */

LOCAL UINT8 sysLed;

/*****
* sysLedInit - Initialize LEDs
*
* This routine initializes the LED variable to zero and clears
* all LEDs.
*
* RETURNS: N/A
*
* SEE ALSO: sysLedOn(), sysLedOff(), sysLedControl().
*/

void sysLedInit
(
    void
)
{
    sysLed = 0;
}

```



```
    /*
     * Write to LED.
     */
    BSCR_LED_REGISTER = sysLed;
}

/*****
 * sysLedOff - Turn selected LED off
 *
 * This routine set the selected LED to off.
 *
 * RETURNS: N/A
 *
 * SEE ALSO: sysLedInit(), sysLedOff(), sysLedControl().
 */

void sysLedOff
(
    UINT8 led
)
{
    sysLed &= ~led;

    /*
     * Write to LED.
     */
    BSCR_LED_REGISTER = sysLed;
}

/*****
 * sysLedOn - Turn selected LED on
 *
 * This routine set the selected LED to on.
 *
 * RETURNS: N/A
 *
 * SEE ALSO: sysLedInit(), sysLedOn(), sysLedControl().
 */

void sysLedOn
(
    UINT8 led
)
{
    sysLed |= led;

    /*
     * Write to LED.
     */
    BSCR_LED_REGISTER = sysLed;
}
```

```
/* *****  
* sysLedControl - Turn selected LED(s) on or off  
*  
* This routine sets the selected LED on or off.  
*  
* RETURNS: N/A  
*  
* SEE ALSO: sysLedInit(), sysLedOff(), sysLedOn().  
*/  
  
void sysLedControl  
(  
    int    ledOn,  
    UINT8 led  
)  
{  
    /*  
     * Check led state.  
     */  
  
    if (ledOn)  
        sysLed |= led;      /* Set LED on. */  
    else  
        sysLed &= ~led;    /* Set LED off. */  
  
    /*  
     * Write to LED.  
     */  
    BSCR_LED_REGISTER = sysLed;  
}  
#endif /* INCLUDE_SYSLED */
```

If the LED manipulation routines are written before the environment is set up for C subroutine linkage, the routines must be written in standalone assembly language. In this case, the above sample code can be used as a starting design for your assembly code. Later on, during the cleanup phase of your BSP development, the LED routines can be rewritten in C.

In addition to the basic LED routines, a simple control loop is useful to flash the LEDs on and off, with a suitable delay between the flashes so that they can be seen easily.

Once the LED routines are written, your initialization code can include calls to turn on or off LEDs at specific points during initialization.

3.2.4 VxBus Initialization Sequence

VxBus compliant BSPs and drivers use a well defined initialization sequence. Drivers register with VxBus, and VxBus pairs devices with drivers to create instances. Each instance (device plus driver) goes through a three-pass

initialization sequence. The following paragraphs describe the sequence that occurs for an instance that is discovered during the boot process. Device drivers can also be downloaded after VxWorks boots, in which case the same sequence is followed, but the operating system features available at each stage during initialization are different.

The first stage of instance initialization occurs early in system initialization, in **sysHwInit()**. At this time, no operating system features are available, so drivers are not able to allocate memory, connect interrupts, or use other operating system features.

The second stage of instance initialization occurs later in system initialization, in **sysHwInit2()**. The driver can now allocate memory, connect ISRs, and use other basic operating system features. Network and file system connections are not available at this time.

The third stage of instance initialization occurs asynchronously, in a separate task that is created late in **usrRoot()**.

Additional initialization can be done on a functionality-specific basis, such as connecting a network driver to the MUX. This is done by registering driver methods with VxBus.

For a more detailed description of VxBus initialization, see the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 1: Fundamentals of Writing Device Drivers*.



NOTE: VxBus device drivers register with VxBus in order to be initialized, this registration does not need to occur at boot time. One debug strategy for VxBus device drivers is to compile the driver into the system but not have the driver register with VxBus. Then, when the system has booted, you can call the registration routine. At this time, the driver is paired with any appropriate devices, and standard debug methods can be used for driver debugging.

3.2.5 Debugging the Initialization Code

The beginning portions of the ROM and RAM initialization sequences differ, but the sequences are otherwise the same. Details of what each BSP procedure must do are provided in [2.2 Boot Sequence](#), p.10. This section reviews the steps of the initialization sequence and supplies tips on what to check if a failure occurs at a particular step.

Initializing ROM-Based Image Types

This section describes the initialization sequence for the ROM-based VxWorks images `vxWorks_rom` and `vxWorks_resrom_nosym`.

romInit.s: romInit()

At power-up (cold start) the processor begins execution at `romInit()`. `romInit()` performs the minimal setup necessary to transfer control to `romStart()` (in `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/all/bootInit.c`). Most hardware and device initialization is performed later in the initialization sequence by `sysHwInit()` in `sysLib.c`.

`romInit()` is responsible for the following actions:

- Initializing the processor.
- Initializing access to target DRAM.
- Jumping to `romStart()` for further initialization; passing `BOOT_COLD` on a cold boot, or the parameter passed from `sysToMonitor()` on a warm boot.

For sample initialization, see the `romInit.s` file in your reference BSP.

Take care not to add too much initialization code to `romInit()`. It is better to do the minimum amount of initialization at this time and to perform additional initialization later in the process. Because some BSPs do more initialization in `romInit()` than necessary, it is wise to review the code from the reference BSP and remove any initialization code that is unnecessary at this stage of the boot sequence.

bootInit.c: romStart()

The text and data segments are copied from ROM to RAM in one of the following ways:

- For `vxWorks_rom`, both the text and data segments are copied to RAM.
- For `vxWorks_resrom_nosym`, only the data segment is copied to RAM.

After the copy action, verify that the data segment is properly initialized. For example:

```
int thisVal = 17; /* some data segment variable */
...
if (thisVal != 17)
    somethingIsWrong();
```

If something is wrong, check whether RAM access is working properly. For example:

```
int dummy;  
...  
dummy = 17;  
if (dummy != 17)  
somethingIsWrong();
```

If RAM access is working, check that the data segment was copied into memory at the right offset. This is only a problem for `vxWorks_resrom_nosym` images. The `romStart()` routine assumes that the data is located at some architecture-specific offset from the end of the text segment in ROM. The exact address used is an architecture-dependent offset from the `etext` symbol. For the specific value used by your architecture, see the `copyLongs()` or `bcopyLongs()` calls in `romStart()` in `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/all/bootInit.c`.

Keep in mind that the memory offset can be different from the reference BSP offset if you are using alternative tools to create your ROM image or if you are using a custom linker script to create your VxWorks image. In these cases, you may need to adjust the offset accordingly.

The last task `romStart()` performs is to call the generic initialization routine `usrInit()` in `usrConfig.c`. The rest of the initialization sequence is described in [Initializing All Image Types](#), p.69.

Creating Additional Diagnostic Routines

Once the processor and memory have been initialized, you have the opportunity to spend some time preparing additional diagnostic routines to help with the remainder of the development effort.

LED Routines

If you have not done so already, you may wish to create LED routines for debugging purposes. For more information, see [3.2.3 Using Debug Routines in the Initialization Code](#), p.61.

Console Output Routines

In addition to the LED routines described above, it may also be helpful to have a polled-mode serial output routine. The first step in producing this routine is to create a more basic routine, possibly called something such as `outConsole()`, that does unformatted polled-mode serial output. This does not allow numbers to be

displayed easily, but it does allow diagnostic output. The prototype of **outConsole()** is as follows:

```
STATUS outConsole
(
    char *   buffer, /* buffer passed to routine */
    int     nchars, /* length of buffer */
    int     outarg  /* arbitrary arg passed from fmt routine */
)
```

This routine disables all interrupts; use polled mode output for the serial device until all characters have been printed, then reset the interrupt mask to the previous value.

Once the **outConsole()** routine is created with the prototype specified above, it is possible to create a **printf()** routine to allow formatted output. The source code is similar to the following:

```
int printf
(
    const char *  fmt,          /* format string to write */
    ...           /* optional arguments to format string */
)
{
    va_list vaList;           /* traverses argument list */
    int nChars;

    va_start (vaList, fmt);
    nChars = fioFormatV (fmt, vaList, outConsole, 1);
    va_end (vaList);

    return (nChars);
}
```



NOTE: This suggested source code for **printf()** assumes that formatted I/O is configured into the system. However, this may not be the case for your system. When you are ready to finalize your BSP, the **printf()** routine should be surrounded by **#ifdef INCLUDE_STDIO** and **#endif /* INCLUDE_STDIO */** statements to avoid pulling in the formatted I/O module unexpectedly. As an alternative, you can write a **printf()** routine without calling **fioFormatV()**. However, the non-standard I/O implementation requires more development effort.

Copying Additional Code From the Reference BSP

If you followed the guidelines provided in earlier sections, your initial development for processor and memory initialization consisted of a number of

files containing empty stub routines. At this point, you can copy relevant material from the reference BSP to your BSP directory.

It is also common practice for developers to copy **usrConfig.c** to the BSP directory and modify **Makefile** with the **USRCONFIG=** line such that a local version of the **usrConfig.c** file is used. In this practice, the contents of the **usrInit()** and **usrRoot()** routines are commented out using **#if 0 /* BSP development */** and **#endif /* BSP development */**. You may also wish to add a call to a debugging output routine (such as **printf()**) at the end of **usrInit()** (before the call to **kernelInit()**) and at the beginning of **usrRoot()**.

When BSP development reaches the stage where **usrInit()** is being executed, remove the commenting from short sections to verify that the system continues to work with these sections in place. This is done by moving the **#if 0 /* BSP development */** line to below the sections that should now be included. At the end of **usrInit()**, a call to **kernelInit()** is made. Once you reach the point at which all the **usrInit()** code is included and the call to **kernelInit()** is occurring, the system should execute the diagnostic message that you had placed at the beginning of **usrRoot()**. If it does not execute the message, there is a problem with the BSP. Once **usrRoot()** is successfully called, start removing the commenting from sections of **usrRoot()**.



NOTE: If the board fails to boot when a system module is initialized, it is almost always caused by a failure in the BSP.

Initializing RAM-Based Image Types

This section describes **sysInit()**, the initialization routine for the RAM-based VxWorks image. The routine is located in **sysAlib.s**. It is the VxWorks entry point and performs the minimal setup necessary to transfer control to **usrInit()** (in **usrConfig.c**). Most hardware and device initialization is performed later in the initialization sequence by **sysHwInit()** in **sysLib.c**.

Initializing All Image Types

The remainder of the initialization code is common to both ROM- and RAM-based images.

usrConfig.c: usrInit()

From a BSP writer's point of view, the main significance of **usrInit()** is that it clears the bss segment so that uninitialized C global variables are now zero, and then calls **sysHwInit()** (in **sysLib.c**) to initialize the hardware. If memory is set up properly, there is little that can go wrong in this routine.

sysLib.c: sysHwInit()

This is the heart of the BSP initialization code. This routine must reset all hardware to a quiescent state so as not to generate uninitialized interrupts later when interrupts are enabled.

Note that it is not sufficient to manipulate the processor interrupt mask. In the general case, it is possible for multiple devices to be connected to the same interrupt line. If this is the case, disabling the interrupt controller for that interrupt line prevents interrupts at the time **sysHwInit()** is executing. However, when interrupts are enabled later, or when the first device connected to a given interrupt line is enabled, other devices using the same interrupt line may cause unacknowledged interrupts, resulting in a system failure.

The first stage of VxBus initialization occurs during the call to the **hardWareInterFaceInit()** routine. This initializes a small pool of memory for use by VxBus and VxBus device drivers, and probes for buses and devices. The order of initialization in **sysHwInit()** should be initialization of hardware which is not associated with specific drivers, then a call to **hardWareInterFaceInit()**, and finally network and serial device initialization and initialization of legacy device drivers. Additional VxBus initialization is done from **sysHwInit2()**, discussed later. For more information about VxBus initialization, see the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 1: Fundamentals or Writing Device Drivers*.

usrConfig.c: usrInit()

After **sysHwInit()** completes, control returns to **usrInit()**. The last task **usrInit()** performs is a call to **kernelInit()** to start the VxWorks kernel. This is the end of the pre-kernel initialization code. The **kernelInit()** routine does not return. Rather, it starts the kernel with **usrRoot()** as the first task.

At this point, if you want to bring the kernel up under control of the WDB agent, you can start the agent. This is an optional step and is not typically performed. For more information, see [3.2.6 Starting the WDB Agent Before the Kernel](#), p.72.

kernelInit()

The **kernelInit()** routine source code is not normally available during BSP development. Instead, the object module is extracted from a library. At this juncture, the source code cannot be modified to add debugging information.

However, **kernelInit()** is very important during BSP development because, deep within the **kernelInit()** routine, interrupts are finally enabled. A very common mistake in BSP development is the failure to ensure that all interrupt sources are quiescent prior to enabling interrupts. If this is not done before the call to **kernelInit()**, the system typically hangs or fails, causing confusion for the BSP developer because the source of the problem is not obvious.

If **kernelInit()** is called but execution fails to reach the start of **usrRoot()**, or if the system behaves erratically in other ways after the call to **kernelInit()**, usually it is one of two problems. Either **sysMemTop()** is returning a bad address or, more likely, some device has not been reset and is generating an interrupt. In the latter case, you must modify **sysHwInit()** to reset the interrupting device.

To find the source of the interrupt, start by figuring out the interrupt vector being generated, applying any of the following techniques:

- Use a logic analyzer to look for instruction accesses to the interrupt vector table.
- Use an OCD device to set breakpoints in the interrupt vector table.
- Modify **sysHwInit()** to mask suspected interrupt vectors through an interrupt controller.
- Modify **sysHwInit()** to connect debugging routines to the suspected interrupt vectors using **intVecSet()** (you cannot use **intConnect()** because it calls **malloc()** and the VxWorks memory allocator is not yet initialized).

usrConfig.c: usrRoot()

The remainder of the VxWorks initialization is done after the kernel is started in **usrRoot()**. The details of the initialization process are covered in subsequent sections. In this phase, it is enough for **usrRoot()** to verify that **sysHwInit()** is properly written.

At this point, you have a working kernel but no device drivers. The only drivers required by VxWorks are a timer and possibly an interrupt controller. Most BSPs also have serial drivers.

3.2.6 Starting the WDB Agent Before the Kernel



NOTE: This procedure applies only to images built from the command line.

This step is optional when creating a new BSP and is rarely performed. However, if you have a slow download environment, you may want to put everything in ROM as early as possible and thus save download cycles. In this case, starting the WDB agent before the kernel is desirable.

Keep in mind, there are several disadvantages to starting the agent before the kernel. These are:

- Once the hardware initialization code is written, bringing up the kernel takes less time than bringing up the agent. Because most developers consider a working kernel to be the more significant milestone, they usually start with the kernel.
- Starting the agent before the kernel is not a significant help to getting the basic kernel working. This is because the basic kernel adds little to what you have written already: the basic kernel adds only a timer driver and possibly an interrupt controller, which are simple devices.
- Starting the WDB agent before the kernel limits you to system-mode debugging.

Starting the agent before the kernel is described in the *Wind River Workbench User's Guide for VxWorks: Setting Up Your Hardware* and the *VxWorks Kernel Programmer's Guide: Kernel*. The following sections provide important additional information.

Caveats

Because the virtual I/O driver requires the kernel, add the following line to **config.h**:

```
#undef INCLUDE_WDB_VIO
```

There is an important caveat if you are planning to use the target agent serial-line communication path. When the kernel is first started, interrupts are enabled in the processor, but driver interrupt handlers are not yet connected. You must ensure that the serial device you use for agent communication does not generate an interrupt. If your board has an interrupt controller, use it to mask serial interrupts in **sysHwInit()**. Be aware that the target agent attempts to use all drivers in an "interrupt on first packet" mode. As a result, you should modify the serial driver to refuse to go into interrupt mode, even if the agent requests that mode.

System-Mode Debugging Techniques

After you have the agent working, you can use it to debug the VxWorks image to which it is linked. To save download time, link the VxWorks code you want to test—driver code, in particular—into the ROM image. To avoid re-making ROMs, consider adding hooks to your BSP and driver routines as follows:

```
void (*myHwInit2Hook)(void);          /* declare a hook routine */
...
void sysHwInit2 (void)
{
    if (myHwInit2Hook != NULL)        /* and conditionally call it */
    {
        myHwInit2Hook();
        return;
    }
    ...                               /* default code */
}
```

Adding hooks allows you to replace the routine from the debugger dynamically. For example, to override the behavior of `sysHwInit2()` above, create a new version of it called `myHwInit2()` in a module called `myLib.o`, and then type the following:

```
(gdb) load myLib.o
(gdb) set myHwInit2Hook = myHwInit2
(gdb) break myHwInit2
(gdb) continue
```

However, if you start the agent before the kernel, you must start the agent after the call to `sysHwInit()`. Therefore, you cannot override `sysHwInit()`. Alternatively, you can add additional hardware initialization code that is called before the kernel is started. In this case, you add a hook right before the call to `kernelInit()`.

As an alternative to hooks, you can call routines from the debugger using the GDB call procedure. For example:

```
(gdb) call myHwInit2
```

The advantage of using hooks instead of the call mechanism is that:

- Hooks let you avoid executing the original code.
- Hooks are much faster than the call mechanism.

If your board has an “abort” or “halt” button, consider connecting a debugging routine to the abort interrupt. Then you can set a breakpoint on your interrupt handler from the debugger. This provides a way for you to gain control of the system if it appears to fail. In this case, it is best to have the abort switch tied to a non-maskable interrupt (NMI).



WARNING: Only unrecoverable interrupts such as “abort” can be connected to an NMI. If a device interrupt is connected to an NMI, the kernel does not work properly.

3.2.7 Building and Downloading VxWorks

The VxWorks image you load to the target depends on the download method you use. The primary images are as follows:

vxWorks

This image starts execution from RAM. It must be loaded into RAM by some external means such as the board’s native debug ROMs.

vxWorks_rom

This image starts execution from ROM, but its text and data segments are linked to RAM addresses. Early in the initialization process, it copies itself into RAM and continues execution from that point.

vxWorks_resrom_nosym

This image executes from ROM. Only the data segment is copied into RAM.

For additional image types, see [2.2.2 Boot Sequence Configurations](#), p.12.

If your download path puts the image in RAM (such as when using a vendor debug ROM), use the **vxWorks** image. If your download path puts the image in ROM (such as when using NetROM), use either **vxWorks_rom** or **vxWorks_resrom_nosym**. The advantage of **vxWorks_rom** is that it can be more easily debugged because software breakpoints can only be set on RAM addresses. The advantage of **vxWorks_resrom_nosym** is that it uses less target memory. The makefile for both ROM images lets you specify an optional **.hex** suffix (for example, **vxWorks_rom.hex**) to produce an S-record file, in addition to the object file.

There is a file called **depend.cputool** that contains the file dependency rules used by the makefile. If this dependency file does not already exist, the makefile automatically generates it. If you add new files to the BSP, delete the dependency file and let the makefile generate a new file.

After you have downloaded your code to the target, examine memory or ROM to make sure that the code is loaded in the right place. Use the **nm** and **objdump** utilities on the VxWorks image to compare what should be in the target memory with what is actually there. Pay special attention to the start addresses of the text and data segments.

For additional information on building and downloading VxWorks, see the appropriate VxWorks programmer's guide.

3.2.8 Interrupt Controllers

The generic interrupt controller device drivers for legacy model device drivers reside in the directory *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/intrCtl*. See the template driver, **templateIntrCtl.c**, for detailed information on interrupt controller driver design and construction.

In this release, the interrupt controller design is improved. For more information, see *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide (Vol. 2): Interrupt Controller Drivers*.

3.2.9 DMA

For legacy model device drivers, VxWorks does not impose a DMA driver model. DMA support is optional, and the architecture of such support is left to the implementation.

This release implements a model for DMA. For more information, see *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide (Vol. 2): Direct Memory Access Drivers*.

3.2.10 Minimum Required Drivers

The only driver required by VxWorks is the system clock, although certain architectures, such as Intel Architecture and PowerPC, also require an interrupt controller driver.

Implementing a system clock driver typically involves using one of the existing drivers from *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/timer/*, */target/src/drv/intrCtl/*, or */target/src/hwif/intrCtl/* (if an interrupt controller driver is required). If you are reusing an existing driver, simply perform board-specific hardware initialization in **sysHwInit()** and connect the interrupt by calling **intConnect()** in **sysHwInit2()**. The timer drivers are simple devices that can be tested by modifying **usrRoot()** to perform some action periodically, such as blinking an LED.

For example:

```
void myTestCode (void)
{
    while (1)
    {
        taskDelay (5*sysClockRateGet());
        sysFlashLed();
    }
}
```

For a normal development system, it is often useful to have serial and Ethernet drivers as well, but these are not required.

3.2.11 Serial Drivers

Most BSPs include an SIO driver for the console serial port. In many cases, one of the standard drivers in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/sio* can be used.

Early in the development process, it was suggested that you remove most of the body of **usrRoot()** with **#if FALSE/#endif** pairs. In order to enable the serial driver, you must move the **#if FALSE** line to a point further down in the code, below the point at which the serial devices are initialized. To test the port, modify **usrRoot()** to spawn some application test code that tests your driver.

For example, periodically print a message to the console as follows:

```
void myTestCode (void)
{
    extern int vxTicks;
    char * message = "still going...\n";
    while (1)
    {
        /* print a message every 5 seconds */
        taskDelay (5*sysClockRateGet());
        write (1, message, strlen (message));
    }
}
```

If none of the standard drivers is applicable to your BSP, you can create a custom SIO driver using a similar driver from *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/sio* and the template driver in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/sio/templateSio.c*.

If you are porting an older BSP (for example, a BSP from a version of VxWorks older than VxWorks 5.2), the device driver used for the serial port may be the older type of serial driver instead of an SIO driver. For the purpose of backward compatibility, these drivers are available in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/serial*. However, no new development should be done with these

drivers. If serious problems are encountered with the old serial driver, it is recommended that you convert the BSP to use an SIO driver.

3.2.12 VxBus Initialization Routines

The following routines are provided by VxBus for the BSP to initialize bus types and device instances. For more information, see the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 1: Fundamentals of Writing Device Drivers*.

hardWareInterFaceInit()

Called once by the BSP at boot time from within **sysHwInit()**. This should be called after basic processor and board initialization has been performed to quiesce on-chip and on-board devices. If non-VxBus drivers are included in the system, their initialization should occur after the call to **hardWareInterFaceInit()**. This routine makes a call to **vxbInit()**, as described below.

```
STATUS hardWareInterFaceInit( )
```

vxbInit() is called once by the BSP at boot time from within **sysHwInit()**. This is called from **hardWareInterFaceInit()**, and does not need to be called directly by the BSP. This routine performs the first pass of bus and device initialization. Buses are probed, in order of discovery, and devices are discovered and matched with drivers to create instances. Each device's first-pass initialization routine is called.

```
STATUS vxbInit( )
```

Drivers for devices other than bus controllers should disable interrupt generation on the device. They are not required to perform any other actions at this time. No operating system facilities are available at this time, and requesting any operating system facility has unpredictable results (for example, crashing the system). The first-pass initialization routine must not allocate memory from the system memory pool, but some memory can be allocated using **hwMemAlloc()**. The driver is responsible for keeping track of what memory is allocated using **hwMemAlloc()** and what memory is allocated from the system memory pool.

vxbDevInit()

Called once by the BSP at boot time. This routine performs the second pass of bus and device initialization. The **init2** routine for each instance is called.

This routine should be called from within **sysHwInit2()** after interrupt handler initialization code, if any, is performed and after the system clock rate is set, but before the network is initialized.

```
STATUS vxbDevInit()
```

The second-pass driver initialization routine is called from **sysHwInit2()**. This is where most drivers should initialize the hardware. Memory allocation is available.

Serial devices present a special case for the second-pass driver initialization routine. The serial device may be the system console. For this reason, serial drivers should complete their initialization in the second-pass initialization routine, and enable themselves to be connected to the I/O system so that they can be connected as the console.

vxbDevConnect()

Called once by the BSP at boot time from within **usrRoot()** but before the network initialization is performed. This routine performs the third and final pass of bus and device initialization. The connect routine for each instance is called.

```
STATUS vxbDevConnect()
```

The driver connection routine is called from late in **usrRoot()**. The purpose of this routine is to give the driver an opportunity to prepare itself for use by operating system facilities and middleware. This may include connecting itself to the I/O system, creating virtual block devices, and other similar actions.

At the time the driver connection routine is called, most operating system facilities are available. However, the network stack is not yet initialized. For details on exactly which operating system facilities are available, check the **usrRoot()** code in **usrConfig.c**.

In the case that an instance is discovered after system initialization (for example, due to a newly downloaded driver being associated with a previously orphaned device or to hot insertion of a device), all initialization routines are called consecutively at the time of instance creation.

3.3 Finalizing Your BSP

This section summarizes the remaining tasks essential to completing your BSP port. Included is a discussion of cleanup, timers, networking, and other issues.

3.3.1 Removing Development-Related Changes

During BSP development, a number of files may be changed, and specific debugging routines are developed. These changes should be cleaned up before the BSP is finalized.

After the BSP is working with a minimum set of drivers, the private copies of **usrConfig.c** and **bootInit.c** should be removed from the BSP directory so that the BSP uses the generic versions of these files (located in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/all*). To reinstall the generic versions, remove the following lines from your BSP **Makefile**:

```
BOOTINIT = bootInit.c  
USRCONFIG = usrConfig.c
```

Execute a **make clean**.

Previously, you may have masked out unwanted configuration code with **#if FALSE/#endif** pairs. Now the unwanted code should be removed in a more standard way. That is, you must undefine the appropriate macros in **config.h**. Keep in mind the macro dependencies listed in the **usrDepend.c** file (located in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/config*).

The LED routines used for debugging are typically short and are likely to be useful for applications after BSP development is complete. For these reasons, they should not be removed. If the routines have not been rewritten in C, you may want to rewrite them now in order to ease the future support burden.

3.3.2 Creating Workbench Projects

The Wind River Workbench documentation contains the necessary information for creating, configuring, and building projects. These steps can all be handled through the project facility. For more information, see the *Wind River Workbench User's Guide* or online help.

3.3.3 Adding Other Timers

Your driver can include an auxiliary clock driver—if your target hardware supports it—as well as a high-resolution timestamp driver.

The auxiliary clock is used by the VxWorks **spy()** utility, and also by certain Wind River host tools. For more information on the auxiliary clock interface, see the

reference entries for the various **sysAuxClk*()** routines and the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide*.

The auxiliary clock interface consists of the following routines:

sysAuxClkConnect()	connect a routine to the auxiliary clock interrupt
sysAuxClkDisable()	turn off auxiliary clock interrupts
sysAuxClkEnable()	turn on auxiliary clock interrupts
sysAuxClkInt()	handle auxiliary clock interrupts
sysAuxClkRateGet()	return the current auxiliary clock interrupt rate
sysAuxClkRateSet()	set the auxiliary clock interrupt rate

The high-resolution timestamp driver is currently used only by the Wind River System Viewer, but writing a timestamp driver can be useful to you for future debugging and can also be useful for application developers using your BSP. The interface can be found in the header file *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/h/drv/timer/timestampDev.h*.

3.3.4 Enabling NVRAM

VxWorks defines an interface for reading and writing to a persistent storage area. This interface is called the non-volatile memory library. VxWorks uses this library to store boot information.

Early in the development process, Wind River recommends that you include **nullNvRam.c** in **sysLib.c**. When you finalize your BSP, it is best to replace **nullNvRam.c** with a more appropriate interface so that boot information can be kept after the board is powered off.

The driver files in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/mem/* include generic versions of NVRAM support routines. These files include:

- **nvRam.c**—supports NVRAM that is addressed as if it were RAM (for example, battery-backed RAM)
- **nvRamToFlash.c**—supports target systems with flash but no other non-volatile memory

- **nullNvRam.c**—supports target systems with no electronically programmable non-volatile memory



NOTE: Wind River does not recommend using **nullNvRam.c** in your final BSP unless it is the only option available for your target system.

Each of the standard files provides the required routines **sysNvRamSet()** and **sysNvRamGet()**, and can be **#included** in **sysLib.c**. The **nvRamToFlash.c** version provides read and write wrappers that call the flash memory routines **sysFlashGet()** and **sysFlashSet()**. If **nvRamToFlash.c** is used, the **sysFlashGet()** and **sysFlashSet()** routines must be provided by the BSP. However, if the **nvRam.c** version works for your board, no additional work is necessary.

If a more complex system is required or if the board's NVRAM does not work with the provided routines, NVRAM support can be provided by the BSP. In many BSPs, the required routines are put in the **sysLib.c** file. However, the preferred method is to put NVRAM support in a separate file called **sysNvRam.c**. In either case, the routines **sysNvRamSet()** and **sysNvRamGet()** must be provided to prevent undefined references when building VxWorks. If it is necessary to write custom versions of these routines, the routines from the standard libraries in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/mem/* can be used as a reference.

3.3.5 Enabling Cache and MMU Devices

The next step in the BSP development process is to get the BSP working with cache and MMU enabled.

The standard cache and MMU libraries are enabled and initialized by the **usrInit()** code in **usrConfig.c**. The call to **cacheLibInit()** is marked by **#ifndef INCLUDE_CACHE_SUPPORT**. To enable cache, define **INCLUDE_CACHE_SUPPORT**, and define **USER_I_CACHE_MODE** and **USER_D_CACHE_MODE** to **CACHE_ENABLED** in **config.h**. You may also need to adjust any conditional compilation you are using for BSP debugging.

Similarly, the MMU is enabled with a call to **usrMmuInit()** in the **usrInit()** routine located in **usrConfig.c**. The call to **usrMmuInit()** is surrounded by **#ifndef INCLUDE_MMU_BASIC** or **INCLUDE_MMU_FULL**.

Enabling the cache or MMU is often a source of problems in the BSP development process. Although the system may work properly with cache and MMU disabled, it is often the case that the system fails to operate correctly when cache or MMU is first enabled. Typically, the cause of the failure is missing or incorrect code in the BSP and is not usually related to something wrong in the cache library. For

example, with cache disabled, an Ethernet device's descriptor table is never exposed to cache coherency problems. However, once cache is enabled, a problem manifests itself. Depending on the nature of the missing or incorrect code, network traffic may stop or the entire system may crash.

For more information on enabling the cache and MMU, see the *VxWorks Hardware Considerations Guide: Virtual Memory Library* and *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide: Cache Considerations*. Also, see [A.4 Cache and MMU](#), p.146, for more information on troubleshooting problems that are encountered when enabling cache and MMU for the first time.

For boards that use an L2 cache not included in the processor chip, neither the architecture nor the CPU code can include support for this cache. In this configuration, cache is treated, in some ways, as an external device with a custom interface to the BSP and application programs. Normally, this interface is kept in the `sysCache.c` file.

In general, this cache support library depends heavily on the board design.

For L2 cache support, the following routines must be supplied and added to `sysCache.c`:

<code>sysL2CacheInit()</code>	initialize L2 cache library
<code>sysL2CacheEnable()</code>	enable L2 cache
<code>sysL2CacheDisable()</code>	disable L2 cache
<code>sysL2CacheFlush()</code>	flush L2 cache
<code>sysL2CacheInvFunc()</code>	invalidate L2 cache

For cache lock support, the following routines must be supplied and added to `sysCacheLockLib.c`:

<code>sysCacheLock()</code>	lock the specified data/instruction region
<code>sysCacheUnlock()</code>	unlock the previously locked cache
<code>sysL2CacheLock()</code>	lock L2 cache
<code>sysL2CacheUnlock()</code>	unlock L2 cache

The following code illustrates one possible set of routine prototypes. Because these routines are never called by the core VxWorks routines, the BSP developer has some discretion in the design.

```
STATUS sysL2CacheInit (void);
void sysL2CacheEnable (void);
void sysL2CacheDisable (void);
void sysL2CacheFlush (void);
void sysL2CacheInvFunc (void);

STATUS sysCacheLock
(
    CACHE_TYPE cacheType,
    void * adrs,
    UINT32 bytes
);
STATUS sysCacheUnlock
(
    CACHE_TYPE cacheType
);
STATUS sysL2CacheLock
(
    CACHE_TYPE cacheType,
    void * adrs,
    size_t bytes
);
STATUS sysL2CacheUnlock (void);
```

The L2 cache initialization routine `sysL2CacheInit()` should be called from `sysHwInit()`. This routine must not enable the L2 cache when other cache is enabled, as L2 cache is enabled by `sysL2CacheEnable()` later in the boot process. If your reference BSP calls `sysL2CacheInit()` from `sysHwInit2()`, it should be considered a bug in the BSP.

3.3.6 Testing Boot ROMs

Boot ROMs use the VxWorks kernel. The main differences between the `bootrom` image and the `vxWorks` image are:

- The `bootrom` image uses `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/all/usrConfig.c` to initialize the kernel just like a standard VxWorks image. The final image is linked at a different address so that the boot ROM executes out of a different address space. Getting the boot ROM working involves essentially the same the steps described previously for the `vxWorks` image. The `bootrom` image includes the `BOOTAPP` components which add the boot shell and image booting functions.

The following features are not compatible with the `bootrom` image:

- `INCLUDE_SHELL`
- `INCLUDE_WDB_SHELL`
- `INCLUDE_BANNER`

In addition, not all of the networking functionality is available to boot ROMs. The FTP, TFTP, and RSH features are available to standard boot ROMs. To include other networking features, the boot ROM must be created in Workbench using the BOOTAPP profile.

- The **bootrom** image is compressed by default. It is decompressed and copied into RAM in the **bootInit.c** file.

During cleanup, each variation of the **bootrom** configuration should be tested.

3.3.7 Providing Bus Interface Support

Bus configuration is often required before devices on the bus can be supported. This section specifies how to configure several bus types (for example, PCI and USB).

After the bus is configured, the devices on the bus can be configured.

VxBus Support

This section briefly discusses VxBus support. For more information on VxBus, see *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 1: Fundamentals of Writing Device Drivers*.

For support of a specific bus type, VxBus-compliant BSPs must reference code that supports the bus type, such as PCI, and they must reference a device driver for the bus controller providing access to the bus. In general, this should be considered device driver development, rather than BSP development. When a driver for a new bus controller is developed, the driver should be made generic enough to be used for other boards that use that bus controller, and put in a driver directory in the source tree rather than in the BSP.

Legacy Bus Interface Support

Legacy device drivers are split into two sections of code, a core driver and a set of interface routines for the core driver to access actual hardware. In addition, the BSP provides support for any bus controller hardware initialization and operation.

PCI Bus Interface Support



NOTE: The information in this section describes the legacy methods for including PCI bus support. Wind River strongly recommends that you use VxBus for new development and that you migrate any existing development work where feasible. For more information on VxBus and bus support, see *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 1: Fundamentals of Writing Device Drivers*.

The libraries **pciConfigLib.c**, **pciConfigShow.c**, **pciIntLib.c**, and **pciAutoCfg.c** provide support for the PCI Bus Specification 2.1. These libraries support basic and automatic configuration.

The PCI bus can be configured manually or automatically. Each method requires a **sysBusPci.c** file to provide the BSP-specific routines for PCI configuration. To configure PCI automatically, **sysLib.c** includes the following three files: **pciAutoConfigLib.c** and **pciConfigLib.c** (located in the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/pci* directory), and **sysBusPci.c** (located in the BSP directory). **sysLib.c** also includes a **sysPciAutoConfig()** routine (located in **sysBusPci.c**) that makes a call to **pciAutoCfg()**.

If PCI autoconfiguration is not desired but one or more devices on the PCI bus are to be supported, manual PCI configuration must be done. Normally, this requires a **sysPciConfig()** routine, which makes the appropriate calls to configure the bus and devices. However, it is recommended that autoconfiguration be used instead.

In order to support PCI autoconfiguration, the **sysBusPci.c** file must, at a minimum, contain the **sysPciAutoConfig()** routine. For most BSPs, the file also includes some or all of the following minor routines and, possibly, other PCI configuration routines:

sysPciAutoConfigIntAssign()

Assigns the "interrupt line" value.

sysPciAutoconfigInclude()

Includes or exclude support for specific devices or routines.

sysPciAutoconfigIntrAssign()

Assigns PCI interrupts.

sysPciAutoconfigPreEnumBridgeInit()

Performs bridge-specific initialization preceding autoconfiguration.

sysPciHostBridgeInit()

Initializes the host bridge.

sysPciAutoconfigPostEnumBridgeInit()

Performs bridge-specific initialization following autoconfiguration.

sysPciRollCallRtn()

Checks the "roll call" list against the list of PCI devices found.

The routines listed above are optional routines that the BSP may provide to assist with PCI autoconfiguration. The routines are installed from within **sysPciAutoConfig()** by issuing a call to **pciAutoCfgCtl()** as specified later in this chapter (see *Fast Back-To-Back Transmissions*, p.88, and later sub-sections). When PCI configuration occurs, the configuration code makes calls to these routines at specific points during the initialization process.

In addition, PCI support requires routines for low-level reads and writes to the PCI configuration space. These routines are referenced from the PCI configuration files through macros. The required macros are:

PCI_IN_BYTE	read a byte from PCI I/O space
PCI_IN_WORD	read a word from PCI I/O space
PCI_IN_LONG	read a longword from PCI I/O space
PCI_OUT_BYTE	write a byte from PCI I/O space
PCI_OUT_WORD	write a word from PCI I/O space
PCI_OUT_LONG	write a longword from PCI I/O space

Typically, these macros refer to the following routines:

sysPciInByte()	reads a byte from PCI configuration space
sysPciInWord()	reads a word (16-bit) from PCI configuration space
sysPciInLong()	reads a long (32-bit) from PCI configuration space
sysPciOutByte()	writes a byte to PCI configuration space
sysPciOutWord()	writes a word (16-bit) to PCI configuration space
sysPciOutLong()	writes a long (32-bit) to PCI configuration space



NOTE: Each of these routines returns the data in the same format used by the processor. Because PCI is defined as little-endian, BSPs for processors that are big-endian must do byte-swapping in these **sysPci*()** routines.

In addition to the PCI configuration space manipulation, you may also want to provide routines to access device registers in PCI memory or I/O space, and do

appropriate byte swapping. For example, you may choose to include the following routines:

sysPciRead32()	read 32-bit PCI (I/O or memory) data
sysPciWrite32()	write a 32-bit data item to PCI space
sysPciRead16()	read 16-bit PCI (I/O or memory) data
sysPciWrite16()	write a 16-bit data item to PCI space

The use of such routines makes it easier for variants of the BSP to support both big- and little-endian configurations.

The modern interface to the PCI autoconfiguration library, starting with VxWorks 5.5, uses an initialization routine, a routine to set configuration options, and a routine to do the actual configuration. This differs from past versions, which created a structure with configuration options and passed a pointer to that structure when calling the routine that does the actual configuration. Many reference BSPs are written with the older interface. However, to use the full capability, the new interface must be used as described in this document.

With the new interface, **sysPciConfig()** may look something like this:

```
void sysPciConfig()
{
    void *pCookie;
    pCookie = pciAutoConfigLibInit(NULL);
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_OPTION, optionValue);
    ...
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_OPTION, optionValue);
    pciAutoCfg(pCookie);
}
```

The calls to **pciAutoCfgCtl()** configure the addresses and options to use during configuration. The available options are listed below.

If no calls to **pciAutoCfgCtl()** are made, the PCI autoconfiguration code enumerates the buses and attempts to configure devices on the bus. However, because there is no default memory or I/O space available, no devices are actually configured. For this reason, the absolute minimum BSP requirement is that some memory or I/O space be specified. For example, the following four lines allow devices to be configured only in the non-cacheable 32-bit memory space. If any of the devices that are present cannot be configured for this space, they are not configured.

```
pCookie = pciAutoConfigLibInit(NULL);
pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MEMIO32_LOC_SET, PCI_MEMIO32_ADDR);
pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MEMIO32_SIZE_SET, PCI_MEMIO32_SIZE);
pciAutoCfg(pCookie);
```

Typically, several other options are set as well. The available options, and the arguments they use, are discussed in the following sections. A more comprehensive example is presented in [Example 3-1](#).

Fast Back-To-Back Transmissions

<code>PCI_FBB_ENABLE</code>	<code>BOOL * pArg</code>
<code>PCI_FBB_DISABLE</code>	<code>void</code>
<code>PCI_FBB_UPDATE</code>	<code>BOOL * pArg</code>
<code>PCI_FBB_STATUS_GET</code>	<code>BOOL * pArg</code>

`PCI_FBB_ENABLE` and `PCI_FBB_DISABLE` enable and disable the routines that check *fast back-to-back* (FBB) functionality. `PCI_FBB_UPDATE` is for use with dynamic or high availability (HA) applications. `PCI_FBB_UPDATE` first disables FBB on all routines, then enables FBB on all routines, if appropriate. In HA applications, this option must be called any time a card is added or removed. The **BOOL** pointed to by `pArg` for `PCI_FBB_ENABLE` and `PCI_FBB_UPDATE` is set to **TRUE** if all cards allow FBB functionality; **FALSE** if any card does not allow FBB functionality or if FBB is disabled. The **BOOL** pointed to by `pArg` for `PCI_FBB_STATUS_GET` is set to **TRUE** if `PCI_FBB_ENABLE` has been called and FBB is enabled, even if FBB is not activated on any card. Otherwise, it is set to **FALSE**.

In the current implementation, FBB is enabled or disabled on the entire bus. If any device anywhere on the bus cannot support FBB, it is not enabled, even if specific sub-buses can support it.

The FBB `pciAutoCfgCtl()` commands must be issued after the `pciAutoCfg()` call is made and the bus is configured. Issuing these calls before `pciAutoCfg()` produces unpredictable results.

FBB bus cycles are disabled by default.



NOTE: High availability (HA) is not available with all versions of VxWorks.

Latency Timer

<code>PCI_MAX_LATENCY_FUNC_SET</code>	<code>FUNCPTR * pArg</code>
<code>PCI_MAX_LATENCY_ARG_SET</code>	<code>void * pArg</code>
<code>PCI_MAX_LAT_ALL_SET</code>	<code>int pArg</code>
<code>PCI_MAX_LAT_ALL_GET</code>	<code>UINT * pArg</code>

PCI_MAX_LATENCY_FUNC_SET

This routine is called for each PCI device present on the bus when configuration takes place. The routine accepts four arguments, specifying bus, device, routine, and a user-supplied argument of type **void***. For more information, see **PCI_MAX_LATENCY_ARG_SET** below. The routine returns a **UINT8** value that is put into the **MAX_LAT** field of the header structure. The user-supplied routine returns a valid value each time it is called. There is no mechanism for any **ERROR** condition, but a default value can be returned in such a case.

The default value of the **MAX_LAT** routine is **NULL**. Unless the **MAX_LAT** routine is changed, **MAX_LAT** values are set according to the value of **PCI_MAX_LAT_ALL_SET** during autoconfiguration.

The following routines pertain to the user-supplied argument discussed above:

PCI_MAX_LATENCY_ARG_SET

When the routine **PCI_MAX_LATENCY_FUNC_SET** is called, **PCI_MAX_LATENCY_ARG_SET** is passed to the routine as the user-supplied argument.

The default value is 0.

PCI_MAX_LAT_ALL_SET

If no user-defined argument is specified in **PCI_MAX_LATENCY_FUNC_SET**, **PCI_MAX_LAT_ALL_SET** specifies a constant maximum latency value for all devices.

The default value is 0.

PCI_MAX_LAT_ALL_GET

If no user-defined argument is specified in **PCI_MAX_LATENCY_FUNC_SET**, this routine retrieves the value of maximum latency for all PCI devices. Otherwise, the integer pointed to by **pArg** is set to the value **0xffffffff**.

Error Messages

PCI_MSG_LOG_SET

FUNCPTR * pArg

The argument passed to **PCI_MSG_LOG_SET** specifies a routine that is called to print warning or error messages from **pciAutoConfigLib**. The specified routine accepts arguments in the same format as **logMsg()**, but does not necessarily need to print the actual message. An example of this routine, which saves the message into safe memory and turns on an LED, is presented below. This command is useful for BSPs that call **pciAutoCfg()** before message logging is enabled. If a

routine is specified, it is superseded by **logMsg()** as soon as it is configured. The default value for this routine is **NULL**.

```
/* sample PCI_MSG_LOG_SET routine */
int pciLogMsg(char *fmt,int a1,int a2,int a3,int a4,int a5,int a6)
{
    uint    chars;
    sysLedOn(4);
    chars = sprintf (sysExcMsg, fmt, a1, a2, a3, a4, a5, a6);
    sysExcMsg += chars;
    return (chars);
}
```

Bus Numbering

PCI_MAX_BUS_GET int * pArg

During autoconfiguration, the library maintains a counter with the highest numbered bus. After configuration is complete, the counter value is retrieved as follows:

```
pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MAX_BUS_GET, &maxBus)
```

Cache Line Size

PCI_CACHE_SIZE_SET int pArg

PCI_CACHE_SIZE_GET int pArg

PCI_CACHE_SIZE_SET

This routine sets the PCI cache line size to the value specified in **pArg**. Cache line size is specified in units of 32-bit words. For more information, see the **pciAutoConfigLib** reference documentation or the PCI specification.

The default cache line size is 0.

PCI_CACHE_SIZE_GET

This routine retrieves the value of the PCI cache line size and returns it in **pArg**.

Automatic Interrupt Binding

PCI_AUTO_INT_ROUTE_SET BOOL pArg

PCI_AUTO_INT_ROUTE_GET BOOL * pArg

PCI_AUTO_INT_ROUTE_SET

This routine enables or disables automatic interrupt binding across PCI bridges during the autoconfiguration process. For more details, see the **pciAutoConfigLib** reference documentation.

The default value is FALSE (disabled).

PCI_AUTO_INT_ROUTE_GET

This routine retrieves the status of automatic interrupt binding.

Base Addressing

32-Bit Memory Space Address Register (Prefetchable)

PCI_MEM32_LOC_SET	UINT32 pArg
PCI_MEM32_SIZE_SET	UINT32 pArg
PCI_MEM32_SIZE_GET	UINT32 * pArg

- **PCI_MEM32_LOC_SET**

This routine sets the base address of the PCI 32-bit memory space. This is an alternative to setting the address using the BSP constant **PCI_MEM_ADRS**.

The default value is 0.

- **PCI_MEM32_SIZE_SET**

This routine sets the maximum size memory chunk allowable for the PCI 32-bit memory space. This is an alternative to setting the size using the BSP constant **PCI_MEM_SIZE**.

The default value is 0.

- **PCI_MEM32_SIZE_GET**

After autoconfiguration is complete, this routine retrieves the amount of memory used for PCI 32-bit memory.

32-Bit Memory Space Address Registers (Non-Prefetchable)

PCI_MEMIO32_LOC_SET	UINT32 pArg
PCI_MEMIO32_SIZE_SET	UINT32 pArg
PCI_MEMIO32_SIZE_GET	UINT32 * pArg

16-Bit I/O Space Address Registers

PCI_IO16_LOC_SET	UINT32 pArg
PCI_IO16_SIZE_SET	UINT32 pArg
PCI_IO16_SIZE_GET	UINT32 * pArg

- **PCI_IO16_LOC_SET**

This routine sets the base address of the PCI 16-bit I/O space. This is an alternative to setting the address using the BSP constant **PCI_ISA_IO_ADRS**. The default value is 0.

- **PCI_IO16_SIZE_SET**

This routine sets the maximum size memory chunk allowable for the PCI 16-bit I/O space. This is an alternative to setting the size using the BSP constant **PCI_ISA_IO_SIZE**.

The default value is 0.

- **PCI_IO16_SIZE_GET**

After autoconfiguration is complete, this routine retrieves the amount of memory used for PCI 16-bit I/O space.

Custom PCI Bridge Initialization

PCI_BRIDGE_PRE_CONFIG_FUNC_SET	FUNCPTR * pArg
PCI_BRIDGE_POST_CONFIG_FUNC_SET	FUNCPTR * pArg

PCI_BRIDGE_PRE_CONFIG_FUNC_SET

This bridge pre-configuration pass initialization routine is provided so that the BSP developer can initialize a bridge device prior to the configuration pass on the bus that the bridge implements. This routine is specified by calling **pciAutoCfgCtl()** with the **PCI_BRIDGE_PRE_CONFIG_FUNC_SET** command as follows:

```
pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_BRIDGE_PRE_CONFIG_FUNC_SET,  
sysPciAutoconfigPreEnumBridgeInit);
```

This optional, user-specified routine takes as input both the bus-device-function tuple, and a 32-bit quantity containing both the PCI device ID and vendor ID of the device. The function prototype for this routine is as follows:

```
STATUS sysPciAutoconfigPreEnumBridgeInit
(
    PCI_SYSTEM *pSys,
    PCI_LOC *pLoc,
    UINT devVend
);
```

This routine can use any combination of this input data to ascertain any special initialization requirements of a particular type of bridge at a specified location on the PCI bus hierarchy.

The default value is NULL, so no pre-enumeration configuration is done.

PCI_BRIDGE_POST_CONFIG_FUNC_SET

The bridge post-configuration pass initialization routine is provided so that the BSP Developer can initialize the bridge device after the bus that the bridge implements is enumerated. This routine is specified by calling **pciAutoCfgCtl()** with the **PCI_BRIDGE_POST_CONFIG_FUNC_SET** command as follows:

```
pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_BRIDGE_POST_CONFIG_FUNC_SET,
    sysPciAutoconfigPostEnumBridgeInit);
```

This optional, user-specified routine takes as input both the bus-device-function tuple, and a 32-bit quantity containing both the PCI device ID and vendor ID of the device. The function prototype for this routine is as follows:

```
STATUS sysPciAutoconfigPostEnumBridgeInit
(
    PCI_SYSTEM *pSys,
    PCI_LOC *pLoc,
    UINT devVend
);
```

This routine can use any combination of this input data to ascertain any special initialization requirements of a particular type of bridge at a specified location on the PCI bus hierarchy.

The default value is NULL, so no post-enumeration configuration is done.

Delay Before Initialization

PCI_ROLLCALL_FUNC_SET FUNCPTR * pArg

The specified routine is configured as a roll call routine.

If a roll call routine is configured, before any configuration is actually done, the roll call routine is called repeatedly until it returns **TRUE**. A return value of **TRUE** indicates that either the specified number and type of devices named in the roll call list have been found during PCI bus enumeration or that the timeout has expired without finding all of the specified number and type of devices. In either case, it is assumed that all of the PCI devices that are going to appear on the buses have appeared and PCI bus configuration can proceed.

The default value is **NULL**, so that no roll call delay is introduced before PCI configuration.

Optional PCI Routines

PCI_INCLUDE_FUNC_SET FUNCPTR * pArg
PCI_INT_ASSIGN_FUNC_SET FUNCPTR * pArg

PCI_INCLUDE_FUNC_SET

This device inclusion routine is specified by assigning a function pointer with the **PCI_INCLUDE_FUNC_SET pciAutoCfgCtl()** command as follows:

```
pciAutoCfgCtl(pSystem, PCI_INCLUDE_FUNC_SET, sysPciAutoconfigInclude);
```

This optional routine takes as input both the bus-device-function tuple, and a 32-bit quantity containing both the PCI vendor ID and device ID of the routine. The function prototype for this routine is as follows:

```
STATUS sysPciAutoconfigInclude  
(  
    PCI_SYSTEM *pSys,  
    PCI_LOC *pLoc,  
    UINT devVend  
);
```

This routine is called from **pciAutoConfig()** for each and every routine encountered in the scan phase. The BSP developer can use any combination of the input data to ascertain whether a device is to be excluded from the autoconfiguration process. The exclusion routine then returns **ERROR** if a device is to be excluded, and **OK** if a device is to be included in the autoconfiguration process.

Note that PCI-to-PCI bridges cannot be excluded, regardless of the value returned by the BSP device inclusion routine. Any return value is ignored for PCI-to-PCI bridges.

The bridge device is always configured with proper primary, secondary, and subordinate bus numbers in the device scanning phase, and proper I/O and

memory aperture settings in the configuration phase of the autoconfiguration process regardless of the value returned by the BSP device inclusion routine.

The default value for the device inclusion routine is `NULL`. This indicates that all devices are autoconfigured.

PCI_INT_ASSIGN_FUNC_SET

This interrupt assignment routine is specified by assigning a function pointer with the `PCI_INCLUDE_FUNC_SET pciAutoCfgCtl()` command as follows:

```
pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_INT_ASSIGN_FUNC_SET, sysPciAutoconfigIntrAssign);
```

This optional routine takes as input both the bus-device-function tuple, and an 8-bit quantity that contains the contents of the interrupt pin register from the PCI configuration header of the device. The interrupt pin register specifies which of the four PCI interrupt request lines available are connected. The function prototype for this routine is as follows:

```
UCHAR sysPciAutoconfigIntrAssign  
(  
    PCI_SYSTEM *pSys,  
    PCI_LOC *pLoc,  
    UCHAR pin  
);
```

This routine can use any combination of this data to ascertain the interrupt line routing. The interrupt line value is returned from the routine, and is programmed into the interrupt line register of the routine's PCI configuration header. Device drivers can subsequently read this register in order to associate the appropriate interrupt vector to attach an interrupt service routine.

The default interrupt line value is 255.

PCI Configuration Example

The following is a more complete version of basic PCI configuration software for an example BSP.



NOTE: For documentation clarity, many items in the following code example are omitted and the order of routines are reorganized in a way that is contrary to Wind River coding conventions. Actual PCI support code should follow Wind River or other coding conventions for ease of maintenance.

Example 3-1 Basic PCI Configuration

```

/* sysBusPci.c - configure PCI bus for hypothetical BSP */

/* forward declarations */
void sysPciAutoConfig (void);
void sysPciMemCfg (void *pCookie);
STATUS sysPciAutoconfigInclude
(
    PCI_SYSTEM *pSys,
    PCI_LOC *pLoc,
    UINT devVend
);
UCHAR sysPciAutoconfigIntrAssign
(
    PCI_SYSTEM *pSys,
    PCI_LOC *pLoc,
    UCHAR pin
);

/*****
* sysPciAutoConfig - BSP support routine to configure PCI bus
*
* RETURNS: N/A
*/

void sysPciAutoConfig (void)
{
    void * pCookie;

    pCookie = pciAutoConfigLibInit(NULL);

    /* Configure Memory Addresses and Sizes */
    sysPciMemCfg(pCookie);

    /* Configuration Options */

    /* Cache Line Size */
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_CACHE_SIZE_SET,
        (void *) (_CACHE_ALIGN_SIZE/4));

    /* Uniform MAX_LAT value */
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MAX_LAT_ALL_SET, (void *) PCI_LAT_TIMER);

    /* BSP-Specified Devices to Configure */
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_INCLUDE_FUNC_SET,
        (void *) sysPciAutoconfigInclude);

    /* BSP-Specified Interrupt Assignment */
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_INT_ASSIGN_FUNC_SET,
        (void *) sysPciAutoconfigIntrAssign);

    /* Perform AutoConfig */
    pciAutoCfg(pCookie);

```

```
/* Enable Fast Back To Back Transactions */
pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_FBB_ENABLE, (void *)NULL);

return;
}

/*****
* sysPciMemCfg - BSP support routine to specify PCI MEM/IO
*
* This routine calls pciAutoCfgCtl() to specify the memory
* and I/O addresses and ranges for the four PCI address
* spaces.
*
* RETURNS: N/A
*/

void sysPciMemCfg(void *pCookie)
{
    /* 32-bit NON-Prefetchable Memory Space */
    #if ( 0 == PCI_MEMIO32_ADDR && 0 != PCI_MEMIO32_SIZE )
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MEMIO32_LOC_SET, (void *)PCI_MEMIO32_ADDR+1);
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MEMIO32_SIZE_SET, (void *)PCI_MEMIO32_SIZE-1);
    #else /* PCI_MEMIO32_ADDR is non-zero */
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MEMIO32_LOC_SET,
                  (void *)PCI_MEMIO32_ADDR);
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MEMIO32_SIZE_SET,
                  (void *)PCI_MEMIO32_SIZE);
    #endif /* PCI_MEMIO32_ADDR */

    /* 32-bit Prefetchable Memory Space */
    #if ( 0 == PCI_MEM32_ADDR && 0 != PCI_MEM32_SIZE )
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MEM32_LOC_SET, (void *)PCI_MEM32_ADDR+1);
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MEM32_SIZE_SET, (void *)PCI_MEM32_SIZE-1);
    #else /* PCI_MEM32_ADDR is non-zero */
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MEM32_LOC_SET, (void *)PCI_MEM32_ADDR);
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_MEM32_SIZE_SET, (void *)PCI_MEM32_SIZE);
    #endif

    /* 16-bit ISA I/O Space - start after legacy devices, kbd, com1, ... */
    #if ( 0 == PCI_IO_ADDR && 0 != PCI_IO_SIZE )
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_IO16_LOC_SET, (void *)PCI_IO_ADDR+1);
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_IO16_SIZE_SET, (void *)PCI_IO_SIZE-1);
    #else /* PCI_IO_ADDR is non-zero */
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_IO16_LOC_SET, (void *)PCI_IO_ADDR);
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_IO16_SIZE_SET, (void *)PCI_IO_SIZE);
    #endif

    /* 32-bit PCI I/O Space */
    #if ( 0 == PCI_IO32_ADDR && 0 != PCI_IO32_SIZE )
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_IO32_LOC_SET, (void *)PCI_IO32_ADDR+1);
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_IO32_SIZE_SET, (void *)PCI_IO32_SIZE-1);
    #else /* PCI_IO32_ADDR is non-zero */
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_IO32_LOC_SET, (void *)PCI_IO32_ADDR);
    pciAutoCfgCtl(pCookie, PCI_IO32_SIZE_SET, (void *)PCI_IO32_SIZE);
    #endif
}
}
```

```
/******  
* sysPciAutocinfigInclude - Specify devices to configure  
*  
* This routine returns TRUE for each device that the  
* BSP needs to have configured.  
*  
* This hypothetical board had on-board power management  
* controller as a PCI device and on-board video controller.  
* Neither of those devices are supported by the BSP, but  
* we want to configure everything else.  
*  
* Note that the PCI_ID_PM and PCI_ID_VIDEO macros are  
* defined in the bspname.h file, as the device and  
* vendor IDs of those devices:  
*  
* #define PCI_ID_PM ( ( PCI_PM_DEVICE << 16 ) | PCI_PM_VENDOR )  
* #define PCI_ID_VIDEO ( ( PCI_VIDEO_DEVICE << 16 ) | PCI_VIDEO_VENDOR )  
*  
* RETURNS: N/A  
*/  
  
STATUS sysPciAutoconfigInclude  
(  
    PCI_SYSTEM *pSys,  
    PCI_LOC *pLoc,  
    UINT devVend  
)  
{  
    /* skip the local host bridge */  
    if ( ( pLoc->bus == 0 ) && ( pLoc->device == 0 ) )  
        return ERROR;  
  
    switch (devVend)  
    {  
        case PCI_ID_PM: /* Exclude Power Management */  
        case PCI_ID_VIDEO: /* Exclude Video */  
            retVal = ERROR;  
            break;  
  
        /* Include Everything Else */  
        default:  
            retVal = OK;  
            break;  
    }  
  
    return (retVal);  
}  
  
/*  
* intIrqTable - interrupt line assignments for autoconfig'd devices.  
* This table includes the IRQ number for each PCI interrupt source  
* on the board. The table is organized by a [bus, device, pin]  
* tuple, since each [bus, device] pair identifies a unique physical  
* location on the PCI bus, and each routine with that location  
* can choose to use a different interrupt pin.  
*/
```

```
struct PciIntIrq
{
    UUINT8 bus;
    UUINT8 device;
    UUINT8 intPin;
    UUINT8 irq;
};

static struct PciIntIrq intIrqTable[] =
{
    /* on-board Ethernet */
    { MAIN_BUS, MAIN_DEV_ETHER, PCI_INT_LINE_A, INUM_TO_IRQ(INTVEC_ETHER_NUM) },

    /* on-board USB */
    { MAIN_BUS, MAIN_DEV_USB, PCI_INT_LINE_A, INUM_TO_IRQ(INTVEC_USB_NUM) },

    /* 3.3V PCI slot on main board */
    { MAIN_BUS, MAIN_DEV_SLOT, PCI_INT_LINE_A, INTVEC_PCI_INTA_IRQ },
    { MAIN_BUS, MAIN_DEV_SLOT, PCI_INT_LINE_B, INTVEC_PCI_INTB_IRQ },
    { MAIN_BUS, MAIN_DEV_SLOT, PCI_INT_LINE_C, INTVEC_PCI_INTC_IRQ },
    { MAIN_BUS, MAIN_DEV_SLOT, PCI_INT_LINE_D, INTVEC_PCI_INTD_IRQ },

    /* Devices on Compact 3-slot PCI extender board on bus 1 */
    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ1, PCI_INT_LINE_A, INTVEC_CPCI_INTA_IRQ },
    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ1, PCI_INT_LINE_B, INTVEC_CPCI_INTB_IRQ },
    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ1, PCI_INT_LINE_C, INTVEC_CPCI_INTC_IRQ },
    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ1, PCI_INT_LINE_D, INTVEC_CPCI_INTD_IRQ },

    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ2, PCI_INT_LINE_A, INTVEC_CPCI_INTC_IRQ },
    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ2, PCI_INT_LINE_B, INTVEC_CPCI_INTD_IRQ },
    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ2, PCI_INT_LINE_C, INTVEC_CPCI_INTA_IRQ },
    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ2, PCI_INT_LINE_D, INTVEC_CPCI_INTB_IRQ },

    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ3, PCI_INT_LINE_A, INTVEC_CPCI_INTD_IRQ },
    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ3, PCI_INT_LINE_B, INTVEC_CPCI_INTA_IRQ },
    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ3, PCI_INT_LINE_C, INTVEC_CPCI_INTB_IRQ },
    { CPCI_BUS, CPCI_DEV_SLOT_PJ3, PCI_INT_LINE_D, INTVEC_CPCI_INTC_IRQ },

    { 0 } /* sentinel */
};

/*****
* sysPciAutoconfigIntrAssign - assign PCI interrupts
*
* This routine returns the interrupt value for PCI auto
* configuration to store in each device/routine's control
* space. This value will be used later to determine the
* vector to use with intConnect().
*
* This routine is written so that each on-board device
* and each slot that can have a card plugged into it must
* be listed in intIrqTable[]. Because some boards are
* designed with optimized interrupt configuration, the
* automatic interrupt assignment sometimes cannot handle
```

```

* the interrupt assignment correctly. The design of this
* routine should handle any board design.
*
* RETURNS: N/A
*/

UCHAR sysPciAutoconfigIntrAssign
(
    PCI_SYSTEM *   pSys,          /* input: AutoConfig system information */
    PCI_LOC *      pFunc,
    UCHAR          intPin        /* input: interrupt pin number */
)
{
    UCHAR irqValue = 0xff;      /* Calculated value */
    int bus = pSys->bus;        /* PCI bus number */
    int device = pSys->device;  /* PCI device number */
    int i;

    /* if no interrupt is required, return default (unassigned) value */
    if (intPin == 0)
        return irqValue;

    /* return the vector for this device as the irqValue */

    for (i = 0; intIrqTable[i].intPin != 0; i++)
    {
        if ((bus == intIrqTable[i].bus) &&
            (device == intIrqTable[i].device) &&
            (intPin == intIrqTable[i].intPin))
        {
            irqValue = intIrqTable[i].irq;
            break;
        }
    }
    return (irqValue);
}

```

All of the above PCI configuration code should be included in **sysBusPci.c**. However, there must be a call to **sysPciAutoConfig()** from somewhere in **sysLib.c**. Modify **sysHwInit2()** in **sysLib.c** so that it makes a call to **sysPciAutoConfig()** to initialize the BSP support for PCI devices. This is done after the clock is connected. If the serial line does not reside on the PCI bus, initialize the serial line prior to the PCI support. Other devices should be configured after PCI. The following is some sample code:

```

#ifdef INCLUDE_PCI
sysPciAutoConfig ();

/* prepare BSP support for callouts from supported END driver */

#if defined(INCLUDE_END) && defined(INCLUDE_FEI_END)
sys557PciInit ();
#endif /* defined(INCLUDE_END) && defined(INCLUDE_FEI_END) */
#endif /* INCLUDE_PCI */

```

To include the PCI support code, **#include sysBusPci.c** from **sysLib.c**. As with the call to **sysPciAutoConfig()**, the **#include sysBusPci.c** line should be surrounded by **#ifndef INCLUDE_PCI** and **#endif**.

PCI Show Routines

VxWorks provides several utilities to display information about devices on the PCI bus. These show routines can be used to help diagnose problems with PCI configuration and driver development.

pciConfigTopoShow()

The routine **pciConfigTopoShow()** was introduced in VxWorks 5.5. This routine provides a readable format display of all devices on the PCI bus. For each device, some basic configuration information is displayed. This includes the *[bus, device, function]* tuple, the device type in an alphanumeric format, the command and status words, and the base address register (BAR) addresses.

Sample output for this routine is as follows:

```
-> pciConfigTopoShow
[0,0,0] type=UNKNOWN (0x80) BRIDGE
      status=0x02b0 ( CAP 66MHZ FBTB DEVSEL=1 )
      command=0x0006 ( MEM_ENABLE MASTER_ENABLE )
      bar0 in prefetchable 64-bit mem space @ 0x00000000
[0,0,0] type=UNKNOWN (0x80) BRIDGE
      status=0x02b0 ( CAP 66MHZ FBTB DEVSEL=1 )
      command=0x0006 ( MEM_ENABLE MASTER_ENABLE )
      bar0 in prefetchable 64-bit mem space @ 0x00000000
[0,16,0] type=SERIAL BUS
      status=0x0210 ( CAP DEVSEL=1 )
      command=0x0006 ( MEM_ENABLE MASTER_ENABLE )
      bar0 in 32-bit mem space @ 0x80000000
[0,16,1] type=SERIAL BUS
      status=0x0210 ( CAP DEVSEL=1 )
      command=0x0006 ( MEM_ENABLE MASTER_ENABLE )
      bar0 in 32-bit mem space @ 0x80001000
[0,16,2] type=SERIAL BUS
      status=0x0210 ( CAP DEVSEL=1 )
      command=0x0006 ( MEM_ENABLE MASTER_ENABLE )
      bar0 in 32-bit mem space @ 0x80002000
[0,18,0] type=P2P BRIDGE to [1,0,0]
      base/limit:
          mem= 0x80100000/0x800fffff
          preMem=0x00000000/0x00000000/0x00000000/0x00000008fffffff
          I/O= 0x00000000/0x00000fff
      status=0x02b0 ( CAP 66MHZ FBTB DEVSEL=1 )
      command=0x0007 ( IO_ENABLE MEM_ENABLE MASTER_ENABLE )
      value = 0 = 0x0
->
```


This example uses a wrPpmc440gp board and BSP, with a USB adapter plugged into a PCI slot. The host bridge, [0,0,0] is shown twice. This is intentional. The USB 2.0 card contains three devices, all listed as serial devices. The board also contains a bridge at [0,18,0], connecting to bus 1.

pciDeviceShow()

The **pciDeviceShow()** routine displays concise information about all of the function zero devices on a given bus. No attempt is made to convert vendor ID, device ID, or class into readable format.

The following example, using the same hardware as the previous example, shows that there are three devices on bus 0 and none on bus 1.

```
-> pciDeviceShow (0)
Scanning function 0 of each PCI device on bus 0 Using configuration mechanism
0
bus      device    function  vendorID  deviceID  class
00000000 00000000 00000000 00001014 000001ef 00068000
00000000 00000010 00000000 00001033 00000035 000c0310
00000000 00000012 00000000 00008086 0000b154 00060400
value = 0 = 0x0
-> pciDeviceShow (1)
Scanning function 0 of each PCI device on bus 1 Using configuration mechanism
0
bus      device    function  vendorID  deviceID  class
value = 0 = 0x0
->
```

Note that **pciDeviceShow()** only displays information about devices configured as function 0. In this example, the second and third devices on the USB adapter do not show up because they are at function 1 and function 2.

pciHeaderShow()

The **pciHeaderShow()** routine displays the full PCI configuration space header for the device at the specified [bus, device, function] tuple. The routine understands both bridged and non-bridged devices.

All values are numeric—**pciHeaderShow()** does not make any attempt to interpret register values.

```
-> pciHeaderShow(0,16,1)
vendor ID =                0x1033
device ID =                0x0035
command register =        0x0006
status register =         0x0210
revision ID =             0x41
class code =              0x0c
sub class code =          0x03
programming interface =   0x10
```

```
cache line =                0x08
latency time =              0x00
header type =               0x00
BIST =                      0x00
base address 0 =            0x80001000
base address 1 =            0x00000000
base address 2 =            0x00000000
base address 3 =            0x00000000
base address 4 =            0x00000000
base address 5 =            0x00000000
cardBus CIS pointer =      0x00000000
sub system vendor ID =     0x14db
sub system ID =             0x0035
expansion ROM base address = 0x00000000
interrupt line =            0x17
interrupt pin =             0x02
min Grant =                 0x01
max Latency =               0x2a
value = 0 = 0x0
->
```

VME Bus Interface Support

To include support for a VME bus interface, you must determine which VME bus controller is used on your target system and include a driver for that controller. The drivers for most standard VME bus controllers are located in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/vme*. If the drivers in that directory are not applicable to your target system, you may need to provide your own driver. In this case, the template VME driver (**templateVme.c**) can be used as a starting point for a custom driver. However, if one of the standard drivers provided is very similar to the device you are using, you may wish to use that driver as a starting point. Your reference BSP may also include VME support for your device (or a similar device). If this is the case, you can use the custom VME driver included in the reference BSP.

In addition to the VME bus controller driver, you must configure the addresses to use for the A16, A24, and A32 address spaces on the VME bus. Normally, the macros **VME_A32_MSTR_LOCAL**, **VME_A32MSTR_SIZE**, **VME_A24_MSTR_LOCAL**, **VME_A24_MSTR_SIZE**, **VME_A16_MSTR_LOCAL**, and **VME_A16_MSTR_SIZE** must be defined. However, this requirement can vary depending on the specific VME controller driver used. Other configuration—such as data width, cycle type, and other VME-specific details—may also be required. Refer to the VME bus controller driver for information on exactly what routines must be called during initialization and what macros must be defined.

The **sysBusTas()** routine is required by the BSP. For boards with a VME bus and no other bus containing memory, the **sysBusTas()** routine is provided by the VME

bus controller. However, for more complex buses, a custom version of this routine may be required. In the case of a single board computer, or other simple board without a complex bus structure, `nullVme.c` can be used to include `sysBusTas()` and other utility stub routines.



NOTE: Wind River does not currently offer the kind of plug-and-play support published in the VME-64 specification and its extensions.

USB Bus Interface Support

VxWorks support for USB is provided as an optional product that supports USB either as a host or as a device. For current information, refer to the Wind River USB documentation and your product release notes.

3.3.8 Updating BSP-Specific Documentation

A BSP is not generally considered complete until the BSP-specific user documentation file, `target.ref`, is updated. As a general rule, an updated `target.ref` file should be available before the BSP is used for any application development. For target hardware that is developed for “in-house” or internal use only, the documentation may be required early in the development process.

Once the core BSP is working and contains the bus support that is required for additional device drivers, it is good idea to update or create the `target.ref` file. The documentation file can also include information for any expected optional drivers and their current level of support. As support for each driver is added and tested, the `target.ref` file should be updated as appropriate.

During application development, the `target.ref` file can be processed and made available from Workbench (in standard HTML format) by issuing a `make man` command from a command or shell window in the BSP directory. See the *Wind River Workbench User's Guide* (or, for Tornado users, the *Tornado User's Guide*) for more information on command-line setup and capabilities.

For complete information regarding the `target.ref` file, see [B. Implementing Documentation Guidelines](#).

Updating target.nr Documentation Files

Many legacy BSPs used an older format documentation file called **target.nr** to describe the hardware configuration. This file uses a different markup syntax than the **target.ref** documentation file.

There is a utility called **mg2ref** supplied with your VxWorks installation to convert from older **target.nr** files to the newer **target.ref** format. If your reference BSP still uses a **target.nr** file, the **mg2ref** output for the reference BSP **target.nr** file can be used as a starting point for writing the **target.ref** file for your new BSP. However, the **target.nr** file itself should not be used as a reference, nor should the **nroff** or **troff** commands used for **target.nr** markup be used in new documentation files.

For more information on converting **target.nr** files to **target.ref** format, see [B.7 Converting target.nr Files, p.184](#).



NOTE: The conversion tool used to convert **target.ref** files, **apigen** for VxWorks 6.x users or **refgen** for VxWorks 5.5 users, is fully backward compatible with **target.nr** files. However, Wind River does not recommend using the syntax used in **target.nr** files for new or updated BSPs.

Update Infrastructure Files

The **bspinstall** script dynamically updates the online help table of contents with new BSPs. The script is located in *installDir/setup*. In Wind River products, this runs as a post-installation step. In order for your BSP to appear in the Workbench table of contents, you need to run it manually or package it into your own installer.

3.3.9 Providing Additional Optional Device Support

Although not truly required for a functional VxWorks kernel, a BSP is not generally considered usable unless it supports, at a minimum, a system clock, a serial port, and an Ethernet interface. The routines required for the system clock and serial port(s) have already been discussed (see [3.2.10 Minimum Required Drivers](#), p.75, and [3.2.11 Serial Drivers](#), p.76, respectively). Support for the Ethernet interface and other optional drivers are discussed in the following sections.

Adding VxBus Devices

One of the goals of VxBus is to minimize the effort to port a driver to a BSP. In general, assuming you are using a well-written VxBus-compliant driver for a

VxBus-compliant BSP (and where the device is available on a given bus type and the driver understands how to recognize the device on that bus type), the effort of getting a driver to work should be no more than including the driver in the project configuration, or defining a macro to include the driver.

Debugging VxBus Device Drivers

When working with VxBus device drivers, start with the default register access functions provided by VxBus and avoid providing BSP-supplied access macros. If faster register access is required, add this support after the driver is working.

VxBus drivers can be initialized after the system has booted, when the debugger and other host tools are available. Because VxBus drivers use driver methods for initialization, rather than BSP-supplied tables, initialization of individual devices after the system has booted is usually relatively simple. The availability of the debugger and other host tools generally improves productivity enough to offset the effort to delay initialization.

When working with legacy drivers, the same condition holds: try to initialize the device after the system has booted, though some parts of the initialization may be more closely integrated with system startup. Therefore, it may be more difficult to initialize the device after the system has booted. However, use of the debugger and other host tools generally provides enough additional information that the effort to postpone initialization is worthwhile.

For more information about debugging device drivers, see the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 1: Fundamentals of Writing Device Drivers*.

Adding Ethernet Devices

The network stack currently requires that Ethernet devices be initialized by calling the `devEndLoad()` routine provided by each driver—for example, `fei82557EndLoad()` is provided by the fei enhanced network driver (END). The parameter to the `devEndLoad()` routine is a character pointer. In order for each Ethernet device to be controlled by a given driver, the `devEndLoad()` routine is called twice. The first time, it is called with a pointer to a zero-length string. At this time, the driver is required to copy its own device name into the string. The network stack then fills in the unit number and initialization string from a table provided by the BSP and calls the `devEndLoad()` routine again. This time, the driver initializes the device and prepares itself for operation.

For this process to work, the BSP must provide a table called **endDevTbl[]** containing the end load strings. This table is usually defined in **configNet.h** and is generally organized in one of two ways.

The simplest organization is that the table is initialized at compile time to contain the initialization strings for the supported devices. This is the most straightforward organization because it is a simple list of devices that are available. Also, the BSP puts the driver's *devEndLoad()* routine into the appropriate field of **endDevTbl[]**, no additional code is required. The drawback to this method is that the system may print a warning message if any of the supported devices are not actually present when the system boots. Configuration of the initialization string must be done statically at compile time using a constant string, rather than being configurable with descriptive macros.

A better organization is for **endDevTbl[]** to be allocated for several entries with the values for each entry being filled as each device is discovered at boot time. During the discovery phase of system initialization, the individual fields of the initialization string are filled in according to the value of descriptive configuration options, and then the driver's *devEndLoad()* routine is called. For this method to work, the BSP must provide a wrapper function for the driver's load routine. A list of sample routines is as follows:

sysDec21x40EndLoad()

Creates a load string and loads a **dec21x40** (dc) device.

sysEl3c90xEndLoad()

Loads an instance of the **el3c90xEnd** driver.

sysEndLoad()

Creates a load string and loads the END devices.

sysFei82557EndLoad()

Loads a **fei82557** (fei) device.

sysLn97xEndLoad()

Creates a load string and loads a **ln97x** (**lnPci**) device.

sysMotCpmEndLoad()

Loads an instance of the **motCpmEnd** driver.

sysMotFecEndLoad()

Loads an instance of the **motFecEnd** driver.

Media Access Controller (MAC) Address for Ethernet Devices

Most modern Ethernet devices require the hardware address (MAC address) to be specified externally from the Ethernet controller chip. For peripheral boards, such as PCI network cards, the MAC address is supplied in ROM on the board and configured into the Ethernet controller during board power-up.

However, for processor boards with on-board Ethernet interfaces, the MAC address typically must be set by software. In most cases, the board is designed so that either three or six octets of non-volatile memory (ROM or flash) are reserved for the MAC address. The MAC address is read from ROM and programmed into the Ethernet device. If six octets are stored in ROM, they are used as the MAC address. Otherwise, the manufacturer's organizationally unique identifier (OUI) is used for the first three octets, and the value in ROM is used for the last three octets.

However, this mechanism is not supported on all boards or by all BSPs. Instead, some boards and BSPs use a constant for the MAC address. In this situation, only one board of a given type can be used on a given subnet. If multiple boards are used, the resulting address conflicts can disrupt systems on the entire subnet. To avoid this issue in your BSP, set the lower three octets of the MAC address to the lower three octets of the device's IP address.

Adding Other Devices

Similar to the Ethernet END driver load routines described in [Adding Ethernet Devices](#), p. 107, support routines required by drivers are considered optional to the BSP. The following list is a small sample of some of the other types of device initialization routines that can be included in a BSP:

sysAtaInit()

Initializes the EIDE/ATA interface.

sysIbcInit()

Initializes the ISA Bridge Controller (IBC).

sysL2CacheInit()

Initializes the L2 cache.

sysScsiInit()

Initializes an on-board SCSI port.

sysTffsInit()

Performs board-level initialization for TrueFFS.

There may also be custom hardware that must be supported in order for the BSP to be useful. The custom hardware support you require may not be provided in the reference BSP and may not be similar to other device support provided by Wind River. If this is the case, you must design the interface between the driver and the BSP.

For more information about adding support for devices, refer to the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide*.

3.3.10 Writing Generic Drivers



NOTE: The information in this section is applicable to legacy model driver maintenance only. Wind River strongly recommends that you use VxBus for new development and that you migrate any existing development work where feasible. For more information on VxBus model device drivers, see *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 1: Fundamentals of Writing Device Drivers*.

This section provides guidelines for writing generic drivers for the handful of devices that are common to most BSPs. Although BSPs can differ considerably in detail, there are some needs that are common to almost all BSPs. For example, most BSPs require a serial device driver or a timer driver. Ideally, the drivers for these devices are generic enough to port to a new BSP with a simple recompilation. This reuse of code reduces maintenance overhead and lets the developer focus on other efforts.

To help you use generic drivers across multiple similar BSPs, your VxWorks installation includes source for generic drivers located in the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv* directory. At compile time, **sysLib.c** (a file duplicated in every BSP) can include generic drivers from the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv* directory as needed. As you develop drivers for your BSP, strive to create drivers that are generic enough to service multiple BSPs. These drivers can be added to vendor-specific subdirectories in the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv* directory, as specified in the following note.



NOTE: Wind River reserves the right to add files to the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv* subdirectories. However, if you write a generic driver for use with multiple BSPs, you can create a company-specific common directory under *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv*, and add your driver to that subdirectory. The name of the directory should include a abbreviation for your company name (must be three letters or more), followed by the word “Common”. For example, **aswiCommon** would be an appropriate directory name for a company called Acme Software Incorporated.

If you are dealing with atypical hardware or legacy code, it may not be practical to use a generic driver. Certain hardware designs are just too unique to work with a generic driver and, although it is sometimes possible to use a generic driver with legacy code, reworking the BSP to use a generic driver may not be worth the effort. This is especially true if you are only upgrading the BSP to a new release of VxWorks. If you are unable to use a generic driver, you must create or maintain a BSP-specific driver. This type of driver does not reside in the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv* directory but is kept in a BSP-specific directory (so that the BSP **sysLib.c** file can include the driver when needed).

Multi-Mode Serial (SIO) Drivers

The generic multi-mode serial drivers reside in the directory *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/sio*. These drivers are called SIO drivers to distinguish them from the older serial drivers, which have only a single interrupt mode of operation. For more information on the older serial driver design, see [Serial Drivers](#), p. 114.

SIO drivers provide an interface for setting hardware options, such as the number of stop bits, data bits, parity, line speed, and so on. In addition, these drivers provide an interface for polled communication that can provide external-mode debugging over a serial line (such as that used by a ROM-monitor debugger). Currently, only asynchronous-mode SIO drivers are supported.

The following serial device macros must be defined for all BSPs:

NUM_TTY

Defines the number of serial channels supported. In **configAll.h**, the default is defined as 2. To override the default, first undefine, then define, **NUM_TTY** in **config.h**. If there are no serial channels, define **NUM_TTY** as **NONE**.

CONSOLE_TTY

This macro defines the channel number of the console. In **configAll.h**, the default is defined as 0. To override the default, first undefine, then define, **CONSOLE_TTY** in **config.h**.

Every SIO device is controlled by an **SIO_CHAN** structure. This structure contains a single member, a pointer to an **SIO_DRV_FUNCS** structure. These structures are defined in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/h/sioLib.h* as:

```
typedef struct sio_chan /* a serial channel */
{
    SIO_DRV_FUNCS * pDrvFuncs;
    /* device data */
} SIO_CHAN;

typedef struct sio_drv_funcs SIO_DRV_FUNCS;

struct sio_drv_funcs /* driver functions */
{
    int (*ioctl)
    (
        SIO_CHAN *      pSioChan,
        int             cmd,
        void *          arg
    );

    int (*txStartup)
    (
        SIO_CHAN *      pSioChan
    );

    int (*callbackInstall)
    (
        SIO_CHAN *      pSioChan,
        int             callbackType,
        STATUS           (*callback)(),
        void *          callbackArg
    );

    int (*pollInput)
    (
        SIO_CHAN *      pSioChan,
        char *          inChar
    );

    int (*pollOutput)
    (
        SIO_CHAN *      pSioChan,
        char outChar
    );
};
```

The members of the `SIO_DRV_FUNCS` structure are as follows:

ioctl()

This routine points to the standard I/O control interface routine for the driver. This routine provides the primary control interface for any driver. To access the I/O control services for a standard SIO device, use the symbolic constants shown in [Table 3-1](#):

Table 3-1 Symbolic Constants for I/O Control Services for Standard SIO Device

<code>SIO_BAUD_SET</code>	Sets a new baud rate.
<code>SIO_BAUD_GET</code>	Gets the current baud rate.
<code>SIO_HW_OPTS_SET</code>	Sets new hardware settings.
<code>SIO_HW_OPTS_GET</code>	Gets current hardware settings.
<code>SIO_MODE_SET</code>	Sets a new operating mode.
<code>SIO_MODE_GET</code>	Gets the current operating mode.
<code>SIO_AVAIL_MODES_GET</code>	Gets available operating modes.
<code>SIO_OPEN</code>	Opens a channel.
<code>SIO_HUP</code>	Closes a channel.

txStartup()

This routine provides a pointer to the routine that the system calls when new data is available for transmission. Typically, this routine is called only from the `ttyDrv.o` module. This module provides a higher level of functionality that makes a raw serial channel behave with line control and canonical character processing.

callbackInstall()

This routine provides the driver with pointers to callback functions that the driver can call asynchronously to handle character **puts** and **gets**. The driver is responsible for saving the callback routines and arguments that it receives from the `callbackInstall()` routine. The available callbacks are `SIO_CALLBACK_GET_TX_CHAR` and `SIO_CALLBACK_PUT_RCV_CHAR`.

Define `SIO_CALLBACK_GET_TX_CHAR` to point to a routine that fetches a new character for output. The driver calls this callback routine with the supplied argument and an additional argument that is the address to receive the new output character, if a character is available. The called routine returns **OK** to

indicate that a character was delivered, or **ERROR** to indicate that no more characters are available.

Define **SIO_CALLBACK_PUT_RCV_CHAR** to point to a routine the driver can use to send characters upward. For each incoming character, the callback routine is called with the supplied argument, and the new character as a second argument. Drivers do not normally care about the return value from this call. Typically, the only option available to the driver is to drop a character if the higher level is not able to receive it.

pollInput() and **pollOutput()**

These routines provide an interface to the polled mode operations of the driver. Do not call these routines unless the device has already been placed into polled mode operation by an **SIO_MODE_SET** operation.

See *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/sio/templateSio.c* for more information on the internal workings of a legacy SIO device driver. For an example of a VxBus model serial driver, see *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/hwif/sio*.

Serial Drivers

The old style of serial drivers, those used before VxWorks 5.3, reside in the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/serial* directory.



NOTE: These serial drivers are provided for backward compatibility with VxWorks 5.2 and earlier. All current generation BSPs should use SIO drivers instead.

To manage information about a serial device, **sysLib.c** uses a device descriptor. This device descriptor also encapsulates board-specific information. For example, it typically includes the frequency of the clock and the addresses of the registers, although the details are dictated by the device. In **sysLib.c**, the serial device descriptor is declared outside the routine definitions as:

```
TY_CO_DEV tyCoDv [NUM_TTY]; /* structure for serial ports */
```

This array is initialized at run-time in **sysHwInit()**. The **TY_CO_DEV** structure is defined in the device header file (for example, *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/h/drv/serial/z8530.h*).

Timer

The generic timer drivers reside in the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/timer* directory. The **templateTimer.c** template file is included in this directory. When writing a timer driver, base the driver on this template file, then modify the BSP **sysLib.c** file to include the driver as needed. If the BSP can only access a single timer, the BSP must support the system clock and not the auxiliary clock. This means that **sysAuxClkConnect()** must return **ERROR**.

The following macros are used for parameter checking in VxWorks timer drivers, and must be defined in each BSP *bspname.h* file:

SYS_CLK_RATE_MIN

Defines the minimum rate at which the system clock can run. Unless hardware constraints dictate otherwise, **SYS_CLK_RATE_MIN** must be less than or equal to 60 Hz.

SYS_CLK_RATE_MAX

Defines the maximum rate at which the system clock can run. Unless hardware constraints dictate otherwise, **SYS_CLK_RATE_MAX** must be greater than or equal to 60 Hz.

AUX_CLK_RATE_MIN

Defines the minimum rate at which the auxiliary clock can run. To support **spy()**, **AUX_CLK_RATE_MIN** must be less than or equal to 100 Hz.

AUX_CLK_RATE_MAX

Defines the maximum rate at which the auxiliary clock can run. To support **spy()**, **AUX_CLK_RATE_MAX** must be greater than or equal to 100 Hz.

Power Management

In order to support the long power management features of VxWorks 6.x, a BSP must provide a one-shot timer. For more information on power management, see the *VxWorks Kernel Programmer's Guide: Kernel*.

One-Shot Timer

Implementing power management in your BSP requires a one-shot timer to support long power management. This timer can be implemented using a spare timer, or the system tick timer can be reconfigured during sleep cycles for a longer timeout. The specific implementation is hardware-dependent. Careful design of this timer is necessary to ensure that system time is corrected after alternate sleep

and busy cycles. If the clock reference of the system and one-shot timers is not the same, conversion errors can lead to accuracy problems.

Remember that service of the one-shot timer is in a critical path. In order to preserve system performance, it is important that the service routines execute quickly. Avoid time consuming operations such as floating-point.

One-shot timer support is provided using the following API, which must be provided by the BSP.

sysOneShotEnable()

This routine is called by power management when the system enters the idle state. Time is passed as an argument. The one-shot timer is programmed to wake the system up at the specified interval and the system tick timer interrupt is disabled. The kernel rescheduler uses this service only if the idle period is scheduled for more than one tick. This avoids a possible race condition when the time remaining on the system clock is very short.

sysOneShotDisable()

This routine is called by power management when the system wakes up. It re-computes current time, disables the one-shot timer, and re-enables the system tick timer.

sysOneShotInit()

This routine is called during board initialization. It configures the one-shot timer and sets the system power management mode.

Sleep cycles can occur rarely or frequently depending on system load. Three load conditions must be considered when designing a one-shot timer:

- An I/O intensive environment with little computation.

If the system is fielding frequent interrupts, it may cycle through awake and idle states many times during one typical system tick period. Each time the core powers back up, current system time is recomputed. Small errors in this calculation can add up, causing clock drift. Care must be taken to accurately compute current time whenever the core powers back up

- A computation-intensive environment with few interrupts.

In this environment, the system may not sleep for extended periods of time. The system timer interrupt is typically disabled when the system is idle, but must be turned back on when the core is powered up. Re-enabling the system timer interrupt allows system time to advance when the system remains busy (awake) during tick expirations.

- An environment with few interrupts and little computation.

In this environment, the system sleeps for extended periods of time. The one-shot timer is typically programmed for the maximum sleep time the hardware supports. This may require changing prescaler or postscaler values in the one-shot timer configuration registers. Re-scaling the one-shot timer may reduce the timer accuracy. It must be phase-locked with the system timer whenever it is activated. Ideally, the system timer should be left on while the system sleeps, but should have its interrupt inhibited. This allows the one-shot timer to regain phase lock with the system timer with little effort.

When the system powers back up, it re-synchronizes time with the system timer. This synchronization prevents clock drift.

One-Shot Timer Examples

Two examples of one-shot timers are provided with your distribution, the ARM Amba timer and the PowerPC m8260 timer. Source for these timers is provided in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/timer/ambaTimer.c* and *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/timer/m8260Timer.c* respectively.

The PowerPC timer supports power management using the system timer. This timer is a free-running timer that generates an interrupt when the timer count matches the value set in one of the timer match registers. With each interrupt, the match value is advanced. To implement the one-shot timer, a match count value is computed for N ticks. When the system wakes up, the number of ticks slept is computed using the timer count register. It should be noted that this time computation requires a divide operation. Depending on your core hardware design, this operation may be time consuming, but it cannot be avoided. Keeping the one-shot timer and system timer locked is straightforward in this example because the same timer is used for both functions. Care is taken to ensure that the wake up time is in the future.

The ARM Amba timer provides three hardware timers. Each uses a preset value that is reloaded when the timer reaches zero. Using different clock sources for the tick and one-shot timers requires a time consuming conversion to compute the fraction of a tick remaining in the system timer. Timers 1 and 2 use the same clock source, so they are used for the system and one-shot timers. Because they use the same source, they can be kept phase-locked with relative ease. The Amba timers have a limited dynamic range. Changing the prescaler allows you to extend the timer interrupt to approximately 700 ms. As noted earlier, changing the scalar values reduces the accuracy of the sleep clock. However, this does not reduce system clock accuracy because the system tick timer is allowed to run during sleep periods. When the system wakes up, time is synchronized.

Non-Volatile Memory

The generic NVRAM and flash drivers reside in the `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/mem` directory. The template file `templateNvRam.c` is included in this directory. This file provides the template driver to be used as the basis of non-volatile memory drivers, including flash. However, do not use this template for the optional True Flash File System (TrueFFS) product. For information on TrueFFS drivers, refer to the documentation accompanying special memory technology drivers (MTDs) for flash devices or see the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide: Flash File System Support With TrueFFS*.

All BSPs are required to have some type of non-volatile memory interface, even if non-volatile memory is not available. The two required routines are `sysNvRamGet()` and `sysNvRamSet()`. Both of these routines require an offset parameter. Internally, these routines use the offset parameter as follows:

```
offset += NV_BOOT_OFFSET; /* boot line begins at <offset> = 0 */
if ((offset < 0) || (strLen < 0) || ((offset + strLen) >
    NV_RAM_SIZE))
    return (ERROR);
```

Thus, the offset parameter is biased so that an offset of 0 points to the first byte of the VxWorks boot line. This is always true even if the boot line is not at the beginning of the non-volatile memory area.

All BSPs must define the following macros:

NV_RAM_SIZE

Defines the total bytes of NVRAM available. Define `NV_RAM_SIZE` in either `config.h` or `bspname.h`. For boards without NVRAM, define `NV_RAM_SIZE` as `NONE`.

BOOT_LINE_SIZE

Defines the number of bytes of NVRAM that are reserved for the VxWorks boot line. The default value is 255 and is defined in `configAll.h`. `BOOT_LINE_SIZE` must be less than or equal to `NV_RAM_SIZE`. To override the default value of `BOOT_LINE_SIZE`, first undefine then define the macro in `config.h` or `bspname.h`.

NV_BOOT_OFFSET

Defines the byte offset to the beginning of the VxWorks boot line in NVRAM. The default value is 0 and is defined in `configAll.h`. This is distinct from `BOOT_LINE_OFFSET`, the offset of the boot line stored in RAM.

The routines `sysNvRamSet()` and `sysNvRamGet()` have an offset parameter. If `NV_BOOT_OFFSET` is greater than zero, you can access the bytes before the

boot line by specifying a negative offset. To override the default value of `NV_BOOT_OFFSET`, first undefine then define the macro.

For boards without NVRAM, include the file `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/mem/nullNvRam.c` for stubbed out versions of the routines that return `ERROR`.

RAM Availability

In order to configure the heap, VxWorks must know how much RAM is available on the system. This information is provided by the `sysMemTop()` BSP routine. As mentioned earlier, your initial BSP design should use a version of `sysMemTop()` in which memory size is configured at compile time. However, for many systems, it is appropriate to rewrite `sysMemTop()` so that it probes actual hardware to determine how much memory is physically present on the system. The actual modifications to the `sysMemTop()` routine can sometimes be made as part of the memory controller driver. For more information about this process, see the memory driver section of the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide: Additional Drivers*.

In addition to modifications to `sysMemTop()`, you must also modify the `sysPhysMemDesc[]` array in `sysLib.c`, and possibly other parts of `sysLib.c` as well, depending on your processor architecture.

The `sysPhysMemDesc[]` array contains information about address ranges on the system as well as the cache and MMU initialization options that each region requires. Refer to the reference BSP or template for an example of `sysPhysMemDesc[]` usage.

On some processors, mechanisms other than the MMU may be available for mapping memory address ranges. Non-MMU mappings are handled as an exceptional case.

On PowerPC 603 and 604 processors, the Block Address Translation (BAT) registers can be used for faster RAM access than the access available when the MMU is used. Configuration of the BAT registers is done in a manner similar to the `sysPhysMemDesc[]` array. An additional array called `sysBatDesc[]` is used to hold information about the physical and virtual addresses. Note that memory mapped by the BAT registers may overlap MMU addressing, which can lead to conflict between BAT addressing and `vmLib` support.



NOTE: For VxWorks 6.x, **vmLib** resources are required for configuration of real time processes (RTPs). For this reason, use of non-MMU addressing mechanisms such as BAT registers is strongly discouraged.

In addition, some processors have limits that affect other aspects of memory sizing, such as branch address range limits, which affect the locations of interrupt exception handlers. For more information, refer to the appropriate VxWorks architecture supplement.

Multifunction Devices

Historically, VxWorks included an *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/src/drv/multi* directory. This directory contained drivers intended for use with ASIC chips that incorporate more than one area of functionality. That is, a single driver that supported the multiple types of functionality available on the chip. Wind River no longer supports this driver model.

Drivers for ASIC chips and multi-function daughter boards should be divided into individual drivers for each functional area. Some of these drivers may depend on features in another driver. If this is the case, the dependency should be well documented in the dependent driver source code.

With separate drivers for different functional areas, users can scale out support for functional areas that are not used by their application.

SCSI-2 Devices

The VxWorks SCSI-2 subsystem consists of the following components:

- SCSI libraries, an architecture-independent component
- SCSI controller driver, an architecture-specific component
- SCSI-2 subsystem initialization code, a board-specific component

Although the BSP is responsible for the initialization code, you must maintain the structures internal to the library code and the controller. For information on how to do this, see the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 3: Legacy Drivers and Migration*.

3.3.11 Troubleshooting and Debugging

This section provides several suggestions for troubleshooting techniques and debugging shortcuts.

SCSI Cables and Termination

A poor cable connection or poor SCSI termination is one of the most common sources of erratic behavior, of the VxWorks target hanging during SCSI execution, and even of unknown interrupts. The SCSI bus must be terminated at both ends, but make sure that no device in the middle of the daisy chain has pull-up terminator resistors or any other form of termination.

Data Coherency Problems

Data coherency problems usually occur in hardware environments where the CPU supports data caching. First, disable the data caches and verify that data corruption is occurring. If the problem disappears with the caches disabled, the coherency problem is related to caches. (Caches can usually be turned off in the BSP by `#undef USER_D_CACHE_ENABLE`.) In order to further troubleshoot the data cache coherency problem, use the `cacheDmaMalloc()` routine in the driver for all memory allocations. However, if hardware snooping is enabled then the problem may lie elsewhere.

Data Address in Virtual Memory Environments

If the CPU board has a memory management unit (MMU), the driver developer must be careful when setting data address pointers during direct memory access (DMA) transfers. When DMA is used in this environment, the physical memory address must be used instead of the virtual memory address. This is because during DMA transfers from the SCSI bus, the SCSI or DMA controller is the bus master and therefore, the MMU on the CPU cannot translate the virtual address to the physical address. Instead, the macro `CACHE_DMA_VIRT_TO_PHYS` must be used when providing the data address to the DMA controller.

3.3.12 Modifying a BSP to Support Kernel Scalability

BSPs that do not provide support for scalable kernel applications may be adapted to do so. This section describes steps to reduce the size of the kernel image by selectively excluding non-essential software modules and components.

For information about scalable profiles, see the *VxWorks Kernel Programmer's Guide: Kernel*.

Polling Mode Serial

A console for serial output may be useful or even required with a minimally sized kernel. A scaled down `printf()` without the full overhead of the `INCLUDE_IO_SYSTEM` component is available. Using the component `INCLUDE_SIO_POLL` and the function binding `_func_consoleOut`, the serial driver can be configured to execute without dependency on the `INCLUDE_IO_SYSTEM` component.

The following code from the `wrSbcPowerQuiccII_scale` BSP demonstrates the process for supporting serial output without `INCLUDE_IO_SYSTEM` by binding `_func_consoleOut` to a custom routine for sending characters to the serial output in polled fashion.

```
void sysSerialHwInit (void)
{
    ...

#ifdef INCLUDE_SIO_POLL
    smc8260Ioctl (&ppcChn[SIO_POLL_CONSOLE], SIO_MODE_SET, SIO_MODE_POLL);
    _func_consoleOut = sysSerialPollConsoleOut;
#endif /* INCLUDE_SIO_POLL */
}

#ifdef INCLUDE_SIO_POLL
/*****
 *
 * sysSerialPollConsoleOut - poll out routine
 *
 * This function prints by polling.
 *
 * RETURNS: N/A
 *
 * ERRNO
 */
```

```

LOCAL int sysSerialPollConsoleOut
(
    int    arg,      /* unused argument */
    char * buf,     /* string to output */
    int    len      /* number of characters to output */
)
{
    char c;
    int  bytesOut = 0;

    if ((len <= 0) || (buf == NULL))
        return (0);

    while ((bytesOut < len) && ((c = *buf++) != EOS))
    {
        while (sioPollOutput((SIO_CHAN *) &ppcChn[SIO_POLL_CONSOLE], c)
            == EAGAIN);
        bytesOut++;

        if (c == '\n')
            while (sioPollOutput((SIO_CHAN *) &ppcChn[SIO_POLL_CONSOLE],
                '\r') == EAGAIN);
    }
    return (bytesOut);
}
#endif /* INCLUDE_SIO_POLL */

```

Module Dependencies

When creating a minimally sized kernel, a number of higher level operating system components are not included. The BSP should be coded so that it depends on optional components only when those components are explicitly included in the configuration. Typically, this is done with conditional compile directives or calls through function pointers that can be tested for NULL.

logMsg()

Replace any direct calls to **logMsg()** with calls using the function binding **_func_logMsg**. This eliminates dependency on the module **logLib**.

```

if (_func_logMsg != NULL)
    _func_logMsg (". . . .", 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6);

```

calloc(), malloc()

Replace **calloc()** or **malloc()** with statically allocated arrays. This eliminates dependency on the module **memPartLib**.

free()

Wrap calls to **free()** in **INCLUDE_MEM_MGR_BASIC** ifdefs. (The **free()** routine is included with the module **memPartLib**.)

```
#ifdef INCLUDE_MEM_MGR_BASIC
free (ptrBuf);
#endif
```

.globl copyright_wind_river

The global variable **copyright_wind_river** does not exist in minimal kernel builds. Remove references to it from all assembly files.

PCI functionality

Support for PCI bus is, like any device driver, optional. Wrap all PCI related functionality in **INCLUDE_PCI** ifdefs.

```
void sysHwInit (void)
{
    . . .

#ifdef INCLUDE_PCI

    /* initialize the V3 PCI bridge controller */

    sysV3Init();

    /* initialize PCI driver library. */

    if (pciIomapLibInit (PCI_MECHANISM_3, CPU_PCI_CNFG_ADRS,
                        CPU_PCI_CNFG_ADRS, 0) != OK)
        sysToMonitor (BOOT_NO_AUTOBOOT);

#endif /* INCLUDE_PCI */
}
```

Cache Initialization

Wrap cache library initialization in **INCLUDE_CACHE_SUPPORT** ifdefs.

MMU Initialization

Initialization of the MMU libraries should be wrapped in (**INCLUDE_MMU_BASIC** || **INCLUDE_GLOBAL_MAP**) ifdefs. The component **INCLUDE_GLOBAL_MAP** is a scaled down version of MMU support. It may be used in place of **INCLUDE_MMU_BASIC** for some minimal kernel configurations.

Serial Driver

All serial driver code should be conditional on `INCLUDE_SIO_POLL` (if supported by the BSP; for more information, see *Polling Mode Serial*, p. 122) or `INCLUDE_TTY_DEV` for interrupt controlled I/O.

BSP-Specific Local Drivers

Some BSPs contain local device drivers. These drivers should be componentized by having their inclusion in a kernel build be dependent on a corresponding `INCLUDE_XXX` macro definition. The `INCLUDE_XXX` macro definition is then defined in the BSP CDF file as a component type. (For more information, see *The BSP CDF*, p. 125.) Once the component type is defined and the source code is wrapped in `ifdef` logic based on the `INCLUDE_XXX` macro, the driver can be easily selected or deselected for a scalable kernel build.

An example of componentized device drivers that are scaled out of a minimal kernel build can be found in the `wrSbcPowerQuiccII_scale` and its `00bspName_scale.cdf` file. The componentized drivers available are: `INCLUDE_MOTSCCEND`, `INCLUDE_MOTFCCEND`, `INCLUDE_FEI82557END`, and `INCLUDE_RTC_SRAM`.

Miscellaneous BSP-Specific Dependencies

Each BSP is unique. Certain BSPs may have additional module dependencies not covered in the preceding discussion. Unaddressed dependencies typically result in link problems due to unresolved externals. The function calls to unresolved externals must be removed outright or wrapped in the appropriate `ifdef` logic as discussed in this section.

The BSP CDF

An integral step for creating scalable BSPs is defining the component configurability in the BSP `00bspName_scale.cdf` file. A new **Bsp** object type has been created specifically for this purpose. The **Bsp** object type defines the components and the conditions under which they should be included in a kernel project (VIP). In the absence of a **Bsp** object type definition, the build tool reverts to parsing `configAll.h` and `config.h` for determining the components that should be included in a kernel project build. This does not allow for scalable kernels.

The **Bsp** object type has two fields for capturing kernel configurability information. The first field is **REQUIRES** which enumerates all the components necessary for proper operation of any kernel build. These components may be

thought of as the minimum set necessary for a minimally sized kernel to operate correctly.

An example of the syntax for the **Bsp** object type is as follows:

```
Bsp      wrSbcPowerQuiccII {
        NAME          Wind River PowerQUICC II
        REQUIRES      INCLUDE_KERNEL \
                     INCLUDE_SYSCLK_INIT \
                     INCLUDE_SYSHW_INIT \
                     INCLUDE_SYS_START
```

Using Reference BSPs

Developers interested in porting their BSPs to build minimally sized kernels should look to the reference BSPs for complete, functioning sample code.

4

Debugging Your BSP

- 4.1 [Introduction](#) 127
- 4.2 [Applying Basic Debugging Techniques](#) 128
- 4.3 [Applying Advanced Debugging Techniques](#) 138

4.1 Introduction

This chapter presents common debugging methods used during BSP development. Many of these methods are described in earlier chapters as part of the development process. This chapter provides you with an overview of the debugging methods available and describes how and why each method is typically used.

There are three major stages of debugging during BSP development. They are: board bring up, creation of a downloadable image, and creation of a boot ROM image. Not all stages are necessary for all projects.

Board Bring Up

During board bring up, the target hardware is still under development. Because of this, some components of the board may not yet be included, and others may not be complete. The major aspects of board initialization are determined at this stage.

Once board bring up is complete, the hardware is fully stable. At this point, an OCD register file is typically available to initialize the board. This register file is used during subsequent BSP development.

Downloaded Image

When the board initialization sequence is determined and a register file is available, general BSP development begins. At this point, you can:

- Create an image on the host using your chosen compiler and tools.
- Download the resulting image to the target using the OCD device.
- Optionally, set a breakpoint before execution begins.
- Initiate execution of the image with the OCD device.
- Perform normal debugging.

Boot ROM Image

The BSP is not complete until it can execute from a system without the assistance of the OCD device. At some point, a boot image is loaded into flash. This image initializes the CPU and, typically, copies the final image to RAM for execution.

There are several issues associated with debugging a flash image with an OCD device, primarily related to setting breakpoints and to the location that the OCD device uses to obtain symbols for debugging purposes. These are discussed in [4.3 Applying Advanced Debugging Techniques](#), p.138.

4.2 Applying Basic Debugging Techniques

This section describes some basic debugging methods that can be used with readily available tools such as on-board LEDs, NVRAM, and ROM monitors. These methods do not rely on an on-chip debugging (OCD) solution. For information on debugging using an OCD, see [4.3 Applying Advanced Debugging Techniques](#), p.138.

4.2.1 Using LEDs as a Diagnostic Tool

As outlined in [3.2.3 Using Debug Routines in the Initialization Code](#), p.61, it is usually best to start the development process by writing code to manipulate an LED device on your target hardware. If no LED is available, it may be possible to manipulate the state of an externally available pin or trace. In this case, you can connect a logic analyzer or simple oscilloscope to the pin in order to watch the state of the signal.

By writing LED code first, you validate that the image is created with consistent addresses. The ability to turn an LED on and off indicates that the code is loaded where it needs to be, and that the boot loader and the image agree.

If the LED does not operate as expected, you must verify that the image is loaded in the expected location. The following section presents several methods used to determine if the code is loaded in the proper place.

4.2.2 Verifying the Image Location

This section discusses how to find addresses and use them to verify your image location in memory.

Finding Addresses in the Image File

The GNU binary utilities provided with your VxWorks installation include two command-line tools that are useful for finding the addresses of symbols and code. The tools are accessed using the commands **nm** and **objdump**, with an architecture specification appended to the name—for example, **nm***mips* or **objdump***pppc*. For further information on these commands, see the GNU binary utility documentation or the online help.

Finding Symbol Addresses

You can use **nm***arch* to find a list of symbols included in an image. The output includes the address that the symbol resolves to, or 00000000 if the symbol is unresolved.

Finding Code Block Addresses

You can use **objdumparch** when you need to find the code that resides at a particular RAM address. For example, the following command shows the entire contents of a VxWorks image file:

```
objdumppppc --disassemble-all --show-raw-insn vxWorks
```

Finding Addresses in the Flash image

A common problem with the development environment is that the process of programming the image into flash does not put the data at the correct location. One way to test this is to examine the hex file—that is, **bootrom.hex** or **vxWorks_rom.hex**, and the contents of memory, to insure that they match as expected.

Hex files are usually used in the process of creating a flash image or burning the image to ROM. If the process being used to create and burn the flash image does not involve a hex file, skip the remainder of this section.

The following is the extra build output generated when creating **bootrom.hex**. Notice that the utility used to perform the conversion from ELF to hex is **objcopyarch**.

Tornado 2.2:

```
installDir/host/hostType/bin/objcopyarch -O srec \  
--gap-fill=0 bootrom out.tmp1  
installDir/host/hostType/bin/objcopyarch -O srec \  
--ignore-vma --set-start=0x0 out.tmp1
```

VxWorks 6.x:

```
installDir/workbench-2.x/hostType/bin/objcopyarch -O srec \  
--gap-fill=0 bootrom out.tmp1  
installDir/workbench-2.x/hostType/bin/objcopyarch -O srec \  
--ignore-vma --set-start=0x0 out.tmp1
```

This hex file is really a Motorola S-Record file that is assumed to start at address 0. Using your flash programmer, you must perform whatever bias or offset is required so that this file starts at the reset vector. Consult your flash programmer documentation for specific details.



NOTE: When using the Wind River ICE SX tools to perform the flash programming, the conversion is from a hex file to a bin file. The bin file that the Wind River tools generate is a special format specific to the Wind River ICE SX tools and is not the more commonly recognized bin format. Therefore, use caution when sharing bin files between Wind River ICE SX tools and other flash programmers, the formats are not likely to be compatible.

The following example shows some data from a **bootrom.hex** file:

```
S00E00000626F6F74726F6D2E6865787C
S21400000048000039600000004800003D436F7079EA
S214000010726967687420313938342D3230303120B7
S21400002057696E64205269766572205379737465D9
...
...
S2140366400000000E000000010000000F0000000024
S2140366500000000000000000000000000000000032
S214036660001377080013770800000000000000000FE
S804000000FB
```

The following is a sample of what each line contains:

```
S 2 14 000000 48 00 00 39 60 00 00 00 48 00 00 3D 43 6F 70 79 EA
```

S – indicates the file is an S- record file

In the second byte:

- 1 – indicates the file uses 16-bit addressing
- 2 – indicates the file uses 24-bit addressing
- 3 – indicates the file uses 32-bit addressing

The next two bytes are record length in hexadecimal.

14 – indicates 16 data bytes + 1 checksum byte + 3 address bytes for a total of 0x14 bytes.

The next few bytes provide the address at which the data is placed. How many bytes is determined by the second byte, as described above. In this case, the second byte is 2, indicating that the file uses 24-bit addresses, or six bytes in the file.

000000 – indicates the address

The remainder of the line contains data.

There is a simple calculation that can be used to help check the validity of this file. Subtract the last address from the first address and get the size of the data to be programmed.

To obtain the first address, look at the second line in the hex file.

To obtain the last address, look at the second-to-last line in the hex file. The two lines of the sample file are presented below, with spaces inserted between the fields for clarity.

```
S 2 14 000000 48000039600000004800003D436F7079EA
S 2 14 036660 00137708001377080000000000000000FE
```

036660 – indicates the starting address of the last data line of the hex file. However, the data on that line fills through the 0x3666f address. Therefore, the end of the data is at the 0x36670 address.

In this example, you have $0x036670 - 0x000000 = 0x036670$. Notice that **edata - romInit** (that is, $0x36670 - 0x000000$) is 0x033670 from the above **nmarch -n** output.

To verify that this is correct, you can check the output of **sizearch**.

For example:

```
C:\T22\ppc\host\x86-win32\bin\sizeppc bootrom
      text    data    bss     dec     hex filename
186422  36410   38544  261376  3fd00 bootrom
```

In this case, add the text and data sizes. The sum of the sizes should be identical to the size calculated for the hex file: $186422 + 36410 = 0x036670 - 0x000000$.

The fact that these calculations come out the same gives the hex file some validity. It is always a good idea to double check this calculation if your image is not working as expected.

Another check is to use the **objdumparch -D** command to look at the disassembly of the executable. The following is a small example of **objdumpppc -D bootrom**:

```
bootrom: file format elf32-powerpc
Disassembly of section .text:
00100000 <_romInit>:
100000: 48 00 00 39 bl 100038 <cold>
100004: 60 00 00 00 nop
100008: 48 00 00 3d bl 100044 <warm>
10000c: 43 6f 70 79 .long 0x436f7079
100010: 72 69 67 68 andi. r9,r19,26472
100014: 74 20 31 39 andis. r0,r1,12601
100018: 38 34 2d 32 addi r1,r20,11570
10001c: 30 30 31 20 addic r1,r16,12576
100020: 57 69 6e 64 rlwinm r9,r27,13,25,18
100024: 20 52 69 76 subfic r2,r18,26998

<rest of output cut off here>
```

Notice how the data in the above S-record matches up with the data in the disassembly.

```
48 00 00 39  
60 00 00 00  
48 00 00 3d  
43 6f 70 79
```

compared to:

```
48 00 00 39 60 00 00 00 48 00 00 3D 43 6F 70 79
```

After programming the flash, read back the flash contents to confirm that the flash is programmed correctly. Always check this when bringing up the board for the first time, to confirm that the development processes are valid.

Looking at the disassembly of an object file is helpful when, given the address of an exception, you need to find out where the exception took place in your code. The following command is helpful in this situation:

```
objdumparch --disassemble-all --show-raw-insn tmp.o
```

Finding Addresses in RAM

The previous sections describe several ways to determine what should be in RAM. However, this information must be correlated with what is actually there. The easiest way to do this is to connect an on-chip debugging (OCD) device to your target, then set a hardware breakpoint at the RAM entry point, and use the OCD device to examine memory. Without the OCD device, determining what is in RAM is more difficult.

If a vendor-supplied ROM monitor is available, it may be possible to use the ROM monitor to load the application and then check the contents of RAM. If two flash banks are available, the VxWorks image can be programmed into the other flash bank and examined from the ROM monitor. Finally, if the ROM monitor provides hardware breakpoint support, it may be possible to set a hardware breakpoint at the RAM address and then start executing the VxWorks boot application. When the breakpoint is reached and execution stops, the memory can be examined using the ROM monitor.

If no ROM monitor is available, it may still be possible to do some debugging. During the initial phases of BSP development, when the BSP consists only of LED code, the entire image may fit into a small bank of NVRAM. After the system boots, this memory can be removed from the system and read on another system.

4.2.3 Verifying RAM

The section discusses how to verify RAM during runtime execution.

At this point, you are building an image and programming the flash with it. The image is located in the correct area and you are ready to power on and run the boot ROM code. You now need a way to debug the runtime image. The following discussion assumes that you do not have an OCD device, but you *do* have at least one LED available on your target hardware or a port pin that can be connected to a logic analyzer.

One useful bit of code that you can add to the `usrConfig.c` file or the `bootInit.c` file are LED routines such as those presented in [3.2.3 Using Debug Routines in the Initialization Code](#), p.61. If you followed the advice in that section, which is recommended as the first step in creating a new BSP, the code verifies that the tools are working and also provides a debugging tool.

If the system does not have an LED available, an alternative is to set up the routines discussed in this section so that they change the status of a port pin that you can then read with a logic analyzer.

This type of debugging can be extremely difficult, and it is strongly encouraged that you have better tools, such as an OCD device. If you do use LEDs for debugging, you must be very creative to see what is happening in the system.

One routine missing from the LED library described earlier is a routine to blink the LED on and off. A sample routine is as follows:

```
void ledBlink(int n)
{
    int i,j;
    /*
     * The 200000 value is picked to be around 1 second of delay. Adjust as
     * needed.
     */
    sysLedInit();
    for(j=0; j < n; j++)
    {
        for(i=0; i < 200000; i++) sysLedOn();
        for(i=0; i < 200000; i++) sysLedOff();
    }
    /* just to create a pause between blinks */
    for(i=0; i < 200000; i++) sysLedOff();
}
```

The call to make is the `ledBlink()` call. A useful approach is to start off with `ledBlink(1)` and then use `ledBlink(2)` and so forth. This is an easy way to tell where the system is within the code as it is executing. This is also a powerful runtime tool

that can get you to the point at which you see the VxWorks boot banner and menu system on the serial output device.

Once the VxWorks boot banner successfully appears, you should be able to use `printf()` routines or some of the debugging facilities already built into the boot menu to help debug. Even before `printf()` routines are available, some debugging information can be output on the serial device after `sysHwInit()` is called. Add the following code to the BSP `sysLib.c` file. This code should work with any BSP that includes a serial driver that can be operated with polled mode output.

```
void sysPrintDebug(char *msg)
{
    unsigned long msgIx;
    int pollStatus;
    for (msgIx = 0; msgIx < strlen(msg); msgIx++)
    {
        do
            pollStatus = sioPollOutput (sysSerialChanGet(0), msg[msgIx]);
        while ( pollStatus == EAGAIN );
    }
}
```

To produce both carriage return and line feed, format your end lines with “`\r\n`”. For example:

```
sysPrintDebug("Made it to sysHwInit2().\r\n");
```

4.2.4 Verifying the Image and OS Configuration

This section discusses how to confirm that VxWorks is properly configured and your image includes the proper VxWorks components.

Post-Processed Compiler Output

When building a VxWorks image, many compile-time macros are expanded, and it is sometimes difficult to know what the actual numeric values of these macros are and which branch of conditionally compiled code is being used. The `bootrom` code, in particular, contains many conditional compilations. One way to find this information is to retrieve the post-processed compiler output.

To retrieve the post-processor output for a given object module, use the following command:

```
make ADDED_CFLAGS=-E file.o > file.i
```

Next, remove all of the lines starting with `#` and all blank lines.

Then, check the code to see what sections have been included and what values are being used.

Operating System Components Built Into the Image

The first step in debugging is to make sure the executable image contains the operating system components you desire.



NOTE: You must set up the VxWorks environment variables in order to run the tools specified below. The easiest way to do this is to use the configuration script created during your installation. For VxWorks 6.x, the **wrenv** script is located in your *installDir*. For previous versions of VxWorks, this is the *installDir*/**host/hostType/bin/torVars** script.

If you are not sure if a particular block of code is included in the final image, you can use the **#warning** macro to determine what components are included at compile time. When the compiler's preprocessor encounters the **#warning** macro in an area of code included in the compilation, it prints the message following the **#warning** keyword.

For example, to see if memory auto-sizing is enabled, the code in **sysPhysMemTop()** in **sysLib.c** can include the following:

```
#ifdef LOCAL_MEM_AUTOSIZE

    /* To Do Auto-sizing stuff */

    /* This BSP does not support auto-sizing */
    #warning We should NOT do auto-sizing

#else /* not LOCAL_MEM_AUTOSIZE */

    /* Don't do auto-sizing, use defined constants. */

    #warning We should be here.

    sysPhysMemSize = (char *) (LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS + LOCAL_MEM_SIZE);

#endif /* LOCAL_MEM_AUTOSIZE */
```

Upon building the code, you may see output similar to the following:

```
ccppc -mcpu=603 -mstrict-align -ansi -O2 -fvolatile -fno-builtin \
-Wall -I/h -I. -IC:\T22\ppc\target\config\all \
-IC:\T22\ppc\target/h -IC:\T22\ppc\target/src/config \
-IC:\T22\ppc\target/src/drv -DCPU=PPC603 -DTOOL_FAMILY=gnu \
-DTOOL=gnu-c sysLib.c
sysLib.c:528: warning: #warning We should be here.
```

This method is helpful when you are not sure if a component is being included or not. Another option is to generate the post-processed compiler output and examine it (for more information on this method, see [Post-Processed Compiler Output](#), p.135). This is helpful to confirm that an expected include file is being picked up before another include file.

Another way to see if components are included is to look at the `nmarch -n` output. For example:

```
installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/wrSbc824x> nmppc -n bootrom
00100000 T _romInit
00100000 T _wrs_kernel_text_start
00100000 T romInit
00100000 T wrs_kernel_text_start
00100038 t cold
00100044 t warm
00100048 t start
001000a4 t ifpdr_value
00100230 t romInit824x
00100680 t romInvalidateTLBs
00100694 t tlbloop
001006a8 t romMinimumBATsInit
0010073c t gcc2_compiled.
0010073c T romStart
00100888 t copyLongs
0010090c t fillLongs
00100964 t gcc2_compiled.
00100964 t gcc2_compiled.
00100964 t memcpy
001009bc t bzero
00100a04 t adler32
.
.
00136658 d fixed_td
0013665c d buf
00136660 d nextBlock
00136664 D inflateCksum
00136670 A _edata
00136670 B _wrs_kernel_bss_start
00136670 A _wrs_kernel_data_end
00136670 A edata
00136670 b fixed_mem
00136670 B wrs_kernel_bss_start
00136670 A wrs_kernel_data_end
00137700 b intBuf
0013e660 D _gp
0013e668 D _SDA_BASE_
0014fda8 b c
0014fde8 b u
0014fe24 b v
001502a4 b x
001502f0 A _end
001502f0 A _wrs_kernel_bss_end
```

```
001502f0 A end  
001502f0 A wrs_kernel_bss_end
```

Because this is a **bootrom** image, the output is not very interesting. To see the symbols in the actual VxWorks image that is used by **bootrom**, look at the **tmp.o** image instead of the **bootrom** image. If **bootrom_uncmp** is the target image, the image contains the full information and no **tmp.o** is available.

4.3 Applying Advanced Debugging Techniques

This section presents the more advanced debugging techniques available to a BSP developer.



NOTE: The methods discussed in this section require an on-chip debugging (OCD) device. For more information on basic debugging techniques, see [4.2 Applying Basic Debugging Techniques](#), p.128.

4.3.1 Symbols

When the OCD device is connected to the target board for debugging, the normal procedure is to load both the image and symbols from a file on the development host then start execution of the image. However, during the boot ROM stage of BSP development, it may be necessary to debug the image exactly as-is, without the additional processor initialization that the debugger requires.

To accomplish this, the boot image is programmed into flash memory on the target, but a copy is kept on the host for use during debugging. The OCD device reads the copy on the host in order to obtain symbol information. Care should be taken to insure that the copy of the image resident on the host matches the copy programmed into flash.

4.3.2 Breakpoints

An OCD device provides debugging support for all stages of BSP development, using methods similar to a standard application debugger.

Types of Breakpoints

To make full use of the OCD device's debugging capability, it is necessary to understand the nature of breakpoints.

There are two kinds of breakpoints available—software breakpoints and hardware breakpoints.

Software Breakpoints

The type of breakpoints typically used during application development are software breakpoints. With software breakpoints, the debugger takes an opcode from RAM and replaces it with a special instruction that causes a debug exception, and sets up a handler to be executed when the debug exception occurs. When the handler runs, it checks to see if the developer has a breakpoint set at that location at the time. If the developer does not have a breakpoint set, the handler executes the saved opcode and continues execution of the program. However, if the developer set a debugging breakpoint to stop the application from executing, the exception handler turns control over to the debugger. At this time, the developer can perform whatever action is required.

Hardware Breakpoints

Hardware breakpoints allow similar functionality to software breakpoints, but they do so without replacing the opcode as is done by software breakpoints. To use this type of breakpoint, the processor must support hardware breakpoints. Different processors support different hardware breakpoint functionality, but it is common for the hardware breakpoint support to be limited to one or two breakpoints.

Because the hardware breakpoints have access to the processor internals, they can also provide additional functionality that is not available with software breakpoints. For example, on some processors, it is possible to set a hardware breakpoint to cause a debug exception when a given memory location is modified, or even when a given memory location is read. This allows watchpoints and other capabilities without the cumbersome mechanisms required to implement that functionality using software breakpoints.

The Boot Procedure as It Relates to OCD

The nature of breakpoints is important when debugging BSPs. Recall that on powerup, the processor starts executing at the reset vector address, usually contained in flash. The code contained in the flash copies itself to RAM and begins

execution. Often, the boot loader then loads another image into a different location in RAM and starts that image executing.

If you want to debug an image during boot, there are two different conditions to be aware of:

- code running directly from flash
- code that is copied into RAM and executed

Initial Breakpoints in Flash Images

When the code is running directly from flash, opcodes are fetched from flash and executed. Because it is not possible to modify the flash to insert the special opcode that is used to generate the debug exception, software breakpoints are not available.

Instead, if the processor supports it, you must set a hardware breakpoint. The hardware breakpoint causes the processor to raise a debug exception, and control is transferred to the debugger.

Initial Breakpoints in Downloaded Images

When debugging a downloaded image, software breakpoints can be used, but there is a condition on the use of software breakpoints. Recall that setting a software breakpoint causes a memory location to be modified by saving the opcode to a safe location and replacing it with a special opcode to generate the exception. However, if the image is copied into RAM after the breakpoint is set, the copy operation overwrites the special opcode, and the breakpoint is lost. For this reason, software breakpoints must be set after the image is loaded.

The standard boot method is to load an image and start execution immediately after loading it. However, this does not give you time to set any software breakpoints.

When an OCD device is used, there are three ways to set software breakpoints early in the boot sequence: separate load-and-go instructions, hardware breakpoints, and forever loops.

Separate Load-and-Go Instructions

Many boot loaders allow an image to be loaded but not run, in addition to the normal load-and-go command. With the VxWorks boot loader, the normal @ command causes the image to be loaded and execution to begin. However, it is also

possible to use the `l` command to load the image, and the `g` command to start execution. Most other boot loaders provide similar functionality, though the commands may be different.

In this case, the sequence is to start the boot loader and use it to load the VxWorks image. Next, use the OCD device to stop the processor and set the desired software breakpoints, then resume operation. At this point, the boot loader is again executing. Use the boot loader `go` command to start VxWorks. When the breakpoint is hit, control returns to the OCD device.

Hardware Breakpoint

If available, the OCD device can set a hardware breakpoint at the RAM entry address. The boot loader is then used to load the image into RAM and start execution. As soon as control is given to the VxWorks initialization code, the hardware breakpoint is encountered and the OCD device takes control. At this point, additional breakpoints can be set using the OCD device—these breakpoints can be either software breakpoints or hardware breakpoints.

Forever Loop

In some cases, it is most convenient to load the image the normal way, using the boot loader load-and-go instruction, and to not use a hardware breakpoint. In this case, it is possible to put a simple infinite loop at the beginning of the VxWorks initialization code. After execution begins, the OCD device interrupts the processor and takes control. At this time, breakpoints can be set at the desired locations, and control can be returned to the VxWorks initialization code.

A

Resolving Common Development Issues

- [A.1 Introduction 143](#)
- [A.2 The Development Environment 144](#)
- [A.3 Exception Handling and Debug Tools 145](#)
- [A.4 Cache and MMU 146](#)
- [A.5 Non-portable Code 147](#)
- [A.6 Volatile Variables 147](#)
- [A.7 Conflicts Between Virtual and Physical Memory 148](#)

A.1 Introduction

This appendix presents a summary of common issues and concerns encountered during BSP development. Many of these problems are discussed in [2.5 Common Problems](#), p. 53, and throughout the main chapters of this document as part of the development process. The information in this appendix provides additional information on these problems and others that you may encounter during the development process.

A.2 The Development Environment

There are a number of problems that can occur due to your choice of development environment. Many of these problems are related to the relationship between the addresses where the linker expects the code to run and the addresses at which the code is actually located. In most situations, these addresses should be identical. However, for a short period of time, the locations can be different.

For example, when the target processor receives a **RESET** signal, it starts to execute at a specific reset vector address, typically determined by the processor design. This address is usually where flash is located on the board. However, it is often best if the boot image is executed from RAM. For this reason, many boot loaders have a short section of position-independent code (PIC) that copies the entire image from flash to RAM, and then transfers control to the RAM copy.

When the boot loader loads the actual OS image, the image is placed at a given location in RAM and the loader causes execution to be transferred to the OS image. The RAM address that the image is loaded at must match the address used in the object file. If these addresses do not match, or if the image must be started with some offset from the normal start location, the OS image that is loaded does not run correctly.

For more information on setting up your development environment, see [2.4 The Development Environment](#), p.46.

A.2.1 Image Locations

There are several locations that are relevant to the image you are debugging:

- the flash reset address for the boot loader
- the RAM address for the boot loader
- the RAM address for the OS image

The boot loader is put into flash at the processor's reset address, and then copied into RAM when the system boots. When the boot loader executes, it reads a VxWorks image file and puts the image into RAM at a third address.

It is important that the two RAM addresses are each large enough to contain the entire image. For example, if the OS image is to be loaded at 0x00040000 (128 KB) and the boot loader's RAM image is at 0x00100000 (1 MB), the OS image must be no larger than 896 KB (1 MB minus 128 KB), or the OS image overwrites the boot loader before the boot loader starts executing the OS image.

If your system becomes unresponsive, verify that the RAM addresses the code is actually loaded at match the addresses used in the code.

A.2.2 Position-Independent Code

One exception to the matching RAM addresses rule is the PIC instructions at the beginning of the flash image.

In VxWorks, there is a short section of PIC that copies the image from flash to RAM and then transfers execution to the copy in RAM. This includes the **romInit()** and **romStart()** routines discussed in [2.2.4 Detailed Boot Sequence](#), p.17. The OS image code must be linked to reside at the RAM address. However, when the image code is programmed into flash, the addresses are different.

When verifying the addresses of the code in flash, the **romInit()** address must match the address of the processor's reset vector. This does not match the address in the **bootrom** image file.

A.3 Exception Handling and Debug Tools

When porting VxWorks to your target board (single or multicore), you must be sure the exception handling continues to work in the manner expected by the Wind River debugging tools. You can verify that your ported BSP does not break the debugging tools by testing the **b**, **c**, and **s** commands in the VxWorks kernel shell for both kernel tasks and RTP tasks. Then, run the WTX connection test from Workbench by right-clicking the target connection and selecting **Target Tools > Run Debugger WTX Connection Test**. You can also run additional tests by running the Workbench debugger tutorials available by selecting **File > New > Example...** and running the desired tutorial.

For more information on exception handling in your BSP, see the **target.ref** file (or BSP reference entry) for your reference BSP.

A.4 Cache and MMU

A BSP that is running correctly without cache often encounters problems when cache is enabled for the first time. In most cases, these problems are not the result of problems with the cache library.



NOTE: In this discussion, the terms *device register* and *register* may refer to the actual registers on some peripheral device or they may refer to structures in RAM that are manipulated by both the processor and the device.

A.4.1 Register Access

When accessing device registers or other shared memory, the processor should invalidate the cache line before reading from the register, and it should flush the cache line immediately after writing to the register. Failure to perform these steps in the appropriate places in a driver or BSP can cause cache coherency problems. When reading from a device register, the main processor may find the register data in cache. In this case, it does not actually check the hardware unless the cache line has been invalidated. Therefore, the value being read may no longer be valid. When writing to a device register, the main processor puts information into a cache line, but does not write it to RAM. Meanwhile, before the processor writes the cached information to RAM, some other device can modify the memory that the cache entry points to. In this case, the modification that was made by the device is never visible to the processor.

When cache is enabled, the initial setting should be to write-through mode if possible. In this mode, the processor does not write to cache without modifying RAM.

If problems occur, they are likely caused by failure to invalidate the cache before reading a device register. When the processor is set to write-back mode, problems can occur both from failure to invalidate the cache before reading the device register and from failure to flush the cache after writing to the device register.

Once the system works in write-through mode, the cache can be configured to write-back mode. If problems occur at this point, they are most likely related to failure to flush the cache after writing to a device register.

In general, if the problem cannot be isolated reasonably quickly, a good procedure is to disable all possible devices, and then re-introduce them into the system one at a time. In this way, when the problem occurs, you know which driver is causing it.

As specified previously, problems occurring when the cache is configured as write-through are often related to failure to invalidate cache before reading a device register. Problems occurring when the cache is configured in write-back mode can be caused by a failure to flush the cache immediately after a write operation.

A.4.2 Timing Issues

Another set of problems related to cache are timing issues. These problems are extremely difficult to debug. If a device writes to a register between the time that the processor writes to a register within the same cache line and the time that the processor flushes the write, the device may not function correctly. It is best to insure that the driver does not write to device registers at a time when the device may also be modifying a nearby register.

How you accomplish this depends on the design of the device.

A.5 Non-portable Code

A common problem when creating BSPs is that code for some devices may have been taken from other sources, and that code may not have been written with portability in mind.

When using code from other sources, you can prevent problems by examining the code for portability before including it in your BSP.

A.6 Volatile Variables

Normally, a compiler is allowed to generate code that maintains copies of any variable in a register, so that the variable does not need to be fetched from memory multiple times. For most application code, this is appropriate behavior. However, for many global variables in BSPs and drivers, there are multiple threads that

access the variables, and maintaining a local copy in a register may cause problems.

All variables that are used from more than one thread, including software threads on the main processor and threads of execution on external devices, should be declared using the **volatile** keyword of C. At the time of this writing, current practice for VxWorks is to use a compiler argument indicating that all BSP and driver variables are to be treated as volatile; it is nevertheless recommended that all variables manipulated by multiple threads be explicitly marked as **volatile**.

A.7 Conflicts Between Virtual and Physical Memory

With VxWorks 5.5 and earlier, VxWorks typically used a flat memory model, which meant that physical addresses and virtual addresses were the same. Device drivers and BSP code could ignore the difference between virtual and physical addresses, and the driver or BSP would still work.

However, there are several reasons why this is not good programming practice. In many modern processors, the physical address space has grown from 32 bits to a larger number such as 36 bits or even 64 bits. However, because VxWorks is still essentially a 32-bit operating system, the virtual address is limited to 32 bits. This means that drivers written without regard to the difference between virtual and physical memory cannot be used on these systems.

In addition, with the introduction of real-time processes (RTPs) in VxWorks 6.x, there is no longer a flat memory model. For drivers to work correctly with VxWorks 6.x, the driver must be aware of the difference between physical and virtual addresses.

For more information, see the *VxWorks Device Driver Developer's Guide, Volume 1: Fundamentals of Writing Device Drivers*.

B

Implementing Documentation Guidelines

- [B.1 Introduction 150](#)
- [B.2 Written Style 150](#)
- [B.3 Sections for Libraries and Subroutines 158](#)
- [B.4 Sections for target.ref 166](#)
- [B.5 Format and Style 169](#)
- [B.6 Directives 181](#)
- [B.7 Converting target.nr Files 184](#)
- [B.8 Generating Reference Entries 185](#)



NOTE: The instructions in this chapter are applicable to both VxWorks 5.5 and VxWorks 6.x users unless otherwise noted. However, the documentation tool provided for the VxWorks 5.5 release is called **refgen**. In most cases, **refgen** and **apigen** are used in the same manner and accept the same syntax and commands. In this chapter, “**apigen**” means both **refgen** and **apigen** unless otherwise noted.

B.1 Introduction

Reference documentation for Wind River board support packages (BSPs) consists of UNIX-style *reference entries* (formerly known as *man pages*) for the module **sysLib.c** and the file **target.ref**. Documentation in HTML format is generated from these files with the Wind River tool **apigen**. During a BSP build, **make** runs **apigen** and places the HTML output in the **docs** directory of your installation. The resulting reference entries can be displayed online with an HTML browser.

This chapter covers Wind River conventions for style and format, and the procedures for generating BSP documentation. The BSP templates supplied with the VxWorks provide examples of the writing style, text format, module layout, and text commands discussed throughout this chapter.

Modules formatted with the conventions discussed here are compatible with all Wind River documentation markup and formatting scripts. This is a requirement for BSPs that are turned over to Wind River for distribution.

B.2 Written Style

This section describes a few of the general requirements for written style in Wind River technical publications. The items that follow are only a portion of the standards described in Wind River's style guide, but are chosen for inclusion here based on their frequent misuse.

Specific requirements for BSPs are in [B.3 Sections for Libraries and Subroutines](#), p.158, and [B.4 Sections for target.ref](#), p.166.

Sentences

- Keep sentences brief and to the point, presenting information in a simple, straightforward manner.
- Always use complete sentences.
- Keep sentences in present tense. Do not use future or past tense unless they are necessary to convey the idea.
- Do not use abbreviated English—do not exclude articles (*the, a, an*) for brevity.

Punctuation

- Always use a colon after the phrase or sentence introducing an example, display, itemized list, or table.
- A comma should always precede the conjunction *and*, *or*, or *nor* when it separates the last of a series of three or more words or phrases. This comma is not optional. For example:
 apples, oranges, and bananas
- Avoid the use of quotation marks. If they are necessary, form quotations using the straight double-quote (") only. Use single quotes only as described in *Special Words*, p.173.

Word Usage

- Do not use capital letters to convey emphasis; use italics. For information on how to apply font changes, see [Table B-5](#). In general, avoid applying italics for emphasis—the best way to convey emphasis is a well cast sentence.
- Do not use the word *so* to mean *thus* or *therefore*. However, the construction *so that* is acceptable.
- Do not use contractions (*don't*, *doesn't*, *can't*, and so on).

Spelling

[Table B-1](#) defines the Wind River standard for terms that are spelled inconsistently, particularly in the computer industry. This table also includes a few words or abbreviations that are commonly misspelled, and words whose spelling is frequently misunderstood because it may depend on context.

Table B-1 **Spelling Conventions**

Use...	Not...
and so forth, among others	etc.
back end	backend
backward	backwards
baseline	base line

Table B-1 **Spelling Conventions** (cont'd)

Use...	Not...
basename (of filename)	base name
bit-field	bit field
boot line	bootline, boot-line
boot loader	bootloader
boot ROM	bootrom, boot rom, bootROM
bring up (v.)	bringup, bring-up
bring-up (n., adj.)	bringup, bring up
bps	BPS, baud
caching	cacheing
cacheable	cachable
callback	call-back
cannot	can not
CD-ROM	CDROM, cdrom
coprocessor	co-processor
countdown	count-down
cross-compiler	cross compiler
cross-development	cross development
cross-reference	cross reference
data type	datatype
dialog	dialogue
e-mail	email, E-mail, Email
Ethernet	ethernet
Excelan	Excellan

Table B-1 **Spelling Conventions** (cont'd)

Use...	Not...
extensible	extendable, extendible
fax	FAX
<i>fd</i>	FD
filename	file name
file system	filesystem
flash (n.)	Flash, flash (v.) or flashing (gerund)
floating-point	floating point
for example	e.g.
FTP	ftp
HP-UX	HP/UX, HPUX
hardcopy	hard copy
home page	homepage
hot swap	hotswap
I/O	i/o, IO, io
ID	id
Internet	internet
interprocess	inter-process
intertask	inter-task
inline	in-line
ioctl()	IOCTL, IOctl, IOctl, ioctl
Iostreams (no bold)	IOStreams, iostreams, IoStreams
KB	Kb, Kbyte
log in (v.)	login, log-in

B

Table B-1 **Spelling Conventions** (cont'd)

Use...	Not...
login (n., adj.)	log in, log-in
lowercase	lower-case
MB	Mb, Mbyte
MC680x0	M68000, M68k
MC68020...	M68020, 68020...
MS-DOS	MSDOS, MS DOS
motherboard	mother-board, mother board
multiprocessor	multi-processor
multitasking	multi-tasking
multi-user	multiuser
nonvolatile	non-volatile
nonzero	non-zero
on-board	on board, onboard
online	on-line
overrun	over-run, over run
overwrite	over-write, over write
PAL	pal
pathname	path name
plug-in	plugin
pop-up	popup
POSIX	Posix
preemptive	pre-emptive
printout	print-out

Table B-1 **Spelling Conventions** (cont'd)

Use...	Not...
real-time, Real-time	realtime, Real-Time (not even in titles)
reentrant	re-entrant
RSH	rsh
run-time, Run-time (adj.), run time (n.)	runtime, Run-Time
SBus	S-Bus, Sbus
scalable	scaleable
SCSI	Scsi, scsi
set up (v.)	set-up
setup (n., adj.)	set-up
shell script	shellscript
single-stepping	single stepping
standalone	stand-alone
start up (v.)	startup, start-up
startup (n., adj.)	start-up
stdio.h	stdio
subclass	sub-class
subdirectory	sub-directory
SunOS	SUN OS
superclass	super-class
task ID	task id
Tcl	TCL, tcl
TFTP	tftp
that is	i.e.

B

Table B-1 **Spelling Conventions** (cont'd)

Use...	Not...
timeout	time-out
timestamp	time stamp, time-stamp
title bar	titlebar
TTY	tty
underrun	under-run, under run
UNIX	Unix
uppercase	upper-case, upper case
Users' Group	User's Group, Users Group
VxWorks	VxWORKS, VXWORKS, vxWorks
Web	web
Web site	website
Wind River	WindRiver
workaround (n.)	work-around
write-through, write-back	writethrough, writeback

Acronyms

Define acronyms at first usage, except for widely recognized acronyms (see [Table B-2](#)). At first usage, give the full definition, followed by the acronym in parentheses, for example:

Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)

Do not use an apostrophe (') to form the plural of an acronym. The plural of *CPU* is *CPUs*.

Table B-2 **Common Acronyms**

Acronym	Definition
ASCII	American Standard Code for Information Interchange
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
API	application programming interface
bss	segment of memory that holds uninitialized variables
CPU	central processing unit
DOS	Disk Operating System
dosFs	DOS-like file system
EOF	end-of-file
FCC	Federal Communications Commission
<i>fd</i>	file descriptor
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
GUI	graphical user interface
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
I/O	input/output
IP	Internal Protocol
LAN	local-area network
NFS	Network File System
PDF	Portable Document Format
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
PTY	pseudo terminal device
RAM	random access memory
rawFs	raw file system
ROM	read-only memory

Table B-2 **Common Acronyms** (cont'd)

Acronym	Definition
RSH	Remote Shell
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol
TTY	teletypewriter (terminal device)
URL	Uniform Resource Locator
WAN	wide-area network

Board Names

Names used for target boards should correspond to the names used by their suppliers; for example, MV5500 is not an acceptable name for the MVME5500.

When multiple board models are covered by the same board support package, and the portion of their names that differs is separated by a slash (/) or a hyphen (-), these portions can be repeated, each separated by a comma and a space. See the examples below:

Force SYS68K/CPU-21, -29, -32
Heurikon HK68/V2F, V20, V2FA

However:

Motorola MVME147, MVME147S-1

B.3 Sections for Libraries and Subroutines

This section discusses special stylistic considerations for BSP library and subroutine documentation on a section-by-section basis.

In the examples that follow, *mfr&board* means the manufacturer's name plus the full model name of the board, as described in [Board Names](#), p.158.

Reference entries for libraries and subroutines always contain the sections shown in [Table B-3](#) in the order shown; other sections can be included as needed.

Table B-3 **Sections for Libraries and Subroutines**

Section Name	Library Entry	Routine Entry	Description
NAME	✓	✓	The title line, containing the name of the element and a short, one-line description.
ROUTINES	✓		The summary of routines provided by this library, generated automatically by apigen .
SYNOPSIS		✓	The routine declaration, generated automatically by apigen .
DESCRIPTION	✓	✓	An overall description of the module.
INCLUDE FILES	✓		The relevant .h files.
RETURNS		✓	The values returned.
ERRNO		✓	The list of ERRNO values set.
SEE ALSO	✓	✓	Cross-references to reference entries for other libraries and routines, or other user manuals.

Special considerations for these sections are discussed below.

NAME Section

This section is generated automatically. The text is taken from the one-line title of the C file or the routine.

- **Libraries**

Describe briefly what this collection of routines does. The hyphen must appear exactly as indicated (space-hyphen-space)—do not use backslashes or double hyphens. The general format is:

```
nameLib.c - the such-and-such library
```

For example:

```
sysALib.s - mfr&board system-dependent assembly routines  
sysLib.c - mfr&board system-dependent library
```

Be sure to include the filename extension (**.c**, **.s**); but note that the **apigen** process strips it off so that it does not appear in the final reference entry.

- **Routines**

For the one-line heading/definition, use the imperative mood and convey action. The general format is:

```
name - do such and such
```

For example:

```
sysMemTop - get the address of the top of memory
```

Do not include the subroutine parentheses in the heading; the **apigen** process adds them in so that they appear in the final reference entry.



CAUTION: The routine heading and definition must be limited to one line only, though wrapping is permitted. An EOL within the **NAME** causes confusing formatting errors through the library or routine section.

ROUTINES Section

This section is generated automatically and lists all subroutines in the library that are not declared **LOCAL**, **static**, or marked **NOMANUAL**.

SYNOPSIS Section

C Routines

For a C routine, this section is the declaration. The section heading is generated automatically and the text is picked up from the declaration in the code, along with the short comments describing each parameter. In unusual cases where the code declaration is not appropriate, a **SYNOPSIS** section can be typed manually in the routine-header comment block. If **apigen** sees a manually entered **SYNOPSIS**, it replaces the one encountered in the routine code.

Tcl Procedures, Scripts, Commands

For Tcl procedures, scripts, and other commands, this section is the execution syntax; it must be typed manually, using the following conventions:

- Enter the calling syntax and parameters between the tags `\ss` and `\se`.
- Show parameters that are optional in square brackets.
- Use the bar character (`|`) to indicate “or”.
- Represent a variable list of arguments with three dots (`...`).
- Bracket arguments between angle brackets (`<` and `>`) when they are placeholders for user-supplied values.
- If angle brackets are meant to indicate redirection of standard input/output, surround them with space characters.

Example command or script input:

```
# SYNOPSIS
# \ss
# hex [-a <adrs>] [-l] [-v] [-p <pc>] [-s <sp>] <file>
# \se
```

Resulting output:

```
SYNOPSIS
hex [-a adrs] [-l] [-v] [-p pc] [-s sp] file
```

DESCRIPTION Section

This section contains the overall description of the module or routine. Start the description with a sentence that begins *This library* or *This routine* or *This command* as appropriate rather than repeat the name of the facility. Use the word *routine*, not *subroutine* or *function*. The description should be a summary of what the facility does or provides, and in more depth than the title line (NAME line).

The heading word DESCRIPTION can be omitted; **apigen** puts it in automatically. (More explicitly, if the first text section that appears following the title line is not an all-caps heading, **apigen** will supply the heading DESCRIPTION automatically, otherwise it will simply output whatever all-caps heading it finds.) However, the DESCRIPTION heading *must* appear if it is not the first section in the routine or library—for example, if it is preceded by a manually entered SYNOPSIS section.

Parameter Lists

The DESCRIPTION section of a routine or command should list and define all parameters. The automatically published routine declaration includes a short comment for each parameter, which serves as a useful overview or memory jogger. However, these short comments are typically not sufficient for thorough documentation. The parameter list in the DESCRIPTION section should provide more information and detail.

Begin the parameter list with the word “Parameters” followed by a colon. Format the list with the item-list tags `\is`, `\i`, and `\ie` (for more information, see [Item Lists \(Definition Lists or Terms Lists\)](#), p.177.) Each parameter should be identified with the `\i` tag, which should be followed by sentences explaining what it is, what it does, what sort of values it expects, and how it is used. To keep the input readable, separate each parameter item with a blank line. For example, consider the routine `unixDiskDevCreate()` with the following declaration:

```
BLK_DEV * unixDiskDevCreate
(
    char * unixFile,      /* name of the UNIX file */
    int   bytesPerBlk,   /* number of bytes per block */
    int   blksPerTrack,  /* number of blocks per track */
    int   nBlocks        /* number of blocks on this device */
)
```

The following shows how the parameters would be described in the DESCRIPTION section:

```
* Parameters:
* \is
* \i <unixFile>
* The name of the UNIX file for the disk device.
*
* \i <bytesPerBlk>
* The size of each logical block on the disk.  If zero,
* the default is 512.
*
* \i <blksPerTrack>
* The number of blocks on each logical track of the disk.
* If zero, the count of blocks per track is set to <nBlocks>;
* that is, the disk is defined as having only a single track.
*
* \i <nBlocks>
* The size of the disk in blocks.  If zero, a default size is used;
* the default is calculated as the size of the UNIX disk divided by
* the number of bytes per block.
* \ie
```

When generated, the above will appear as follows:

Parameters:

unixFile

The name of the UNIX file for the disk device.

bytesPerBlk

The size of each logical block on the disk. If zero, the default is 512.

blksPerTrack

The number of blocks on each logical track of the disk. If zero, the count of blocks per track is set to *nBlocks*; that is, the disk is defined as having only a single track.

nBlocks

The size of the disk in blocks. If zero, a default size is used; the default is calculated as the size of the UNIX disk divided by the number of bytes per block.

The text immediately following a parameter is a sentence fragment, not a complete sentence; however, it should start with a capital and end with a period. Do not start the sentence fragment with “specifies the ...”; this is understood. Do not reiterate the name of the parameter. Do not omit articles (the words *the*, *a*, and *an*).

CORRECT: The name of the UNIX file for the disk device.

INCORRECT: Specifies the name of the UNIX file for the disk device.

INCORRECT: <unixFile> specifies the name of the UNIX file for the disk device.

INCORRECT: name of UNIX file for disk device.

Any subsequent definition text that follows the sentence fragment must consist of true complete sentences.

INCLUDE FILES Section

In C library entries, the heading INCLUDE FILES should provide a comma-separated list of relevant header files. List include files only when users need to **#include** them in their code explicitly to use the library. For example:

```
INCLUDE FILES: sysLib.h, specialLib.h
```

RETURNS Section

- Include a RETURNS section in all routines. If there is no return value (as in the case of a **void**) simply enter "N/A" without a period, as in the following:

```
RETURNS: N/A
```

- Mention only true function returns in this section, not values copied to a buffer given as an argument. (However, do describe the latter in the DESCRIPTION section.)
- Do not treat return values as complete sentences; the subject and verb are understood. However, always start the return-value statement with a capital and end it with a period; and again, do not use abbreviated English. For example:

```
RETURNS: The address of the top of memory.
```

- Keep return statements in present tense, even if the conditions that cause an **ERROR** or any other return value may be thought of as "past" once **ERROR** is returned.

```
CORRECT:      RETURNS: OK, or ERROR if memory is not available.
```

```
INCORRECT:    RETURNS: OK, or ERROR if memory was not available.
```

- In **STATUS** returns, **ERROR** must be followed by a qualifying statement. Always enter a comma after "OK," because it must be clear that the qualifier belongs to the **ERROR** condition and not the **OK**. For example:

```
RETURNS: OK, or ERROR if memory is insufficient.
```

In some cases the return value will be "OK, always" and "ERROR, always."

- Do not preface lines of text with extra leading spaces. An input line whose first character is a space will cause a line break. In the past, some authors applied this technique in RETURNS sections to force line breaks for separate elements of a return—we do not follow this convention. For example:

```
CORRECT:      * RETURNS: OK, or ERROR if the tick rate is invalid or the  
               * timer cannot be set.
```

```
INCORRECT:    * RETURNS: OK, or ERROR  
               *           if the tick rate is invalid or  
               *           the timer cannot be set.
```

ERRNO or ERRORS Section

For C routines, you must list any **errno** values set directly by the routine. However, the decision about whether to include or exclude specific **errno** values returned by called routines is left to your discretion. As a general guideline, if you feel that listing the **errno** values set by the called routine improves the usability of the documentation, then list the individual **errno** values returned by the called routine in addition to those set directly by the routine.

Format the list with the item-list tags `\is`, `\i`, and `\ie` (for more information, see [Item Lists \(Definition Lists or Terms Lists\)](#), p.177.) Tag each error name with the `\i` tag. For example:

```
ERRNO
\is
\i S_objLib_OBJ_ID_ERROR
<msgQId> is invalid.

\i S_objLib_OBJ_Deleted
The message queue was deleted while waiting to receive a message.

\i S_objLib_OBJ_TIMEOUT
No messages were received in <timeout> ticks.
\ie
```

SEE ALSO Section

The SEE ALSO section is optional. For C routines, Tcl procedures, and C++ methods, this section is output automatically and includes a reference to the parent library, class, or module name. If the SEE ALSO section is entered explicitly in these cases, the parent name is added automatically to the list of references.

The SEE ALSO section should be the last section of a reference entry. Its purpose is to provide cross-references to other relevant documentation, other reference entries, other Wind River manuals, or non-Wind River documentation.

- Do not include manual section numbers using the UNIX parentheses-plus-number scheme; however, do append parentheses to routine names per the documentation standard (see [Routine Names](#), p.173):

```
CORRECT:      SEE ALSO: sysLib, vxTas()
```

```
INCORRECT:   SEE ALSO: sysLib(1), vxTas(2)
```

- Include cross-references to books by using **apigen's** `\tb` tag. Each `\tb` tag must appear on a separate line. For more information about this tag, see [Special](#)

[Words](#), p.173. References to chapters of Wind River manuals should take the form *Publication Title: Chapter Name*. Do not include the chapter number or page number. For example:

```
SEE ALSO: someLib, anotherLib, someRoutine(),  
         \tb Tornado User's Guide: Establishing Your Environment,  
         \tb Motorola MC68020 User's Manual
```

As this example illustrates, cross-references to other reference entries should come first; cross-references to books should come last.

Note the commas at the ends of the first two lines in the above example; the comma is necessary because these references will be run together on output. Alternatively, you can separate the references with blank lines to keep each book on a line by itself—this approach is preferable when there are three or more books. Note also that the list is not terminated with a period.

B.4 Sections for target.ref

The target-information reference entry is generated from the file **target.ref**, located in the *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname* directory. This file contains board-specific information necessary to run VxWorks. [Table B-4](#) lists the subsections included in a typical **target.ref** file.

Table B-4 **Sections for target.ref**

Section Name	Description
NAME	The name of the board
INTRODUCTION	Summary of scope and assumptions
FEATURES	Supported and unsupported features of the board
HARDWARE DETAILS	Driver and hardware details for the board
SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS	Special features or restrictions
BOARD LAYOUT	The board layout in ASCII format
SEE ALSO	Cross-references to Wind River documentation.

Table B-4 **Sections for target.ref** (cont'd)

Section Name	Description
BIBLIOGRAPHY	References to additional documentation

NAME Section

The information in the NAME section should all be on a single line and typed in single quotes as in the following example:

`'mfr&board'`

mfr&board stands for the manufacturer's name plus the manufacturer's name for the board model, as described earlier. For example:

`'Motorola MVME2603, MVME2604'`

INTRODUCTION Section

This section includes getting-started information, including subsections detailing ROM installation, boot ROM flash instructions, and jumper settings for VxWorks operation.

FEATURES Section

This section describes all the features of the board. Every feature should be identified under either the *Supported Features* or *Unsupported Features* subheadings. Each board configuration option should be considered a feature. A third subheading, *Feature Interactions*, describes how one feature or board configuration affects others.

HARDWARE DETAILS Section

This section discusses hardware elements and device drivers, such as serial, Ethernet, and SCSI devices. It also includes memory maps for each bus and lists of interrupt levels and/or vector numbers for each interrupting source.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS Section

This section identifies the unique characteristics of the board. It includes all information needed by the user that does not fit in any other section.

For customers that run the BSP validation test suite, this section must also address known failures of tests in the test suite. Presumably the board either does not have a special feature or it implements it in a special manner. The BSP writer is responsible for documenting all exceptions noted during testing of the BSP. For more information on the validation test suite, see [C. BSP Validation Test Suite](#).

BOARD LAYOUT Section

In this section, include some diagrammatic way of notifying users of the locations of serial and Ethernet connectors, jumpers and switches, the reset button, and other items relevant to getting the board working. The preferred method of providing this information is by using a detailed diagram or picture with the relevant connectors labeled. This is especially important for the console and Ethernet connectors. In cases where the connectors are stacked vertically, be sure to indicate which connector is the console; that is, the uppermost or lowermost D-9 connector. In **target.nr** files, this type of diagram is provided as an ASCII representation of the board. This is still an acceptable format, although a JPEG image is preferred.

Use the `\bs` and `\be` tags to display board diagrams. See the template BSP for guidelines on diagramming jumper positions.

SEE ALSO Section

For VxWorks 5.5 BSPs, this section always references the *Setup and Startup* chapter of the *Tornado User's Guide* (VxWorks 6.x BSPs do not include any automatic references). Other Wind River manuals can be referenced as necessary.

Use the `\tb` tag for titles of manuals. For example:

```
SEE ALSO:  
\tb Tornado User's Guide: Establishing Your Environment,  
\tb VxWorks BSP Developer's Guide
```

BIBLIOGRAPHY Section

This section references any additional technical manuals, data sheets, or supplements that the user should have at hand. Use the `\tb` tag for these references. (See [Table B-5](#).) For example:

```
SEE ALSO:  
\tb Motorola PowerPC 603 RISC Microprocessor User's Manual,  
\tb Motorola PowerPC Microprocessor Family: The Programming Environments
```

Note the commas at the ends of the first references in the above examples; the commas are necessary because these references are run together on output. Alternatively, you can separate the references with blank lines to keep each book on a line by itself—this approach is preferable when there are three or more books.

B.5 Format and Style

This section describes **apigen** markup and text-input conventions. The formatting elements are few and straightforward. To work with **apigen**, source modules and their documentation must be laid out in accordance with a few simple principles.

Source-file text should fill out the full line width (80 characters maximum).

Formatting is controlled by special text *markup*, summarized in [Table B-5](#). Some markup consists of format commands called *tags*, which begin with a backslash and are followed by letters. Some markup elements are *inline*; that is, they can appear anywhere in the line of text. Other markup elements must start in text column 1. Format tags, except `\lib`, always start in column 1. See the following note.



NOTE: For the purpose of describing documentation markup, “column 1” really means column 1 of *text*. In other words, where comment blocks are delineated with a comment indicator at the beginning of each line, such as a C routine, Tcl procedure, shell script, or C++ module, the first column is really the first character after the `*+space`, `#+space`, or `//+space`. Thus, for example, in the documentation header for a C routine “column 1” really means column 3.

Table B-5 **Apigen Markup**

Location	Markup	Description	Mangen Equiv.
	blank line	Paragraph separator.	N/A
col 1 only	initial spaces	Preserve all spaces and line breaks for this input line.	N/A
col 1 only	all capital letters	Section heading.	N/A
col 1 only	<code>\&all-caps heading</code>	Escape that prevents the special interpretation of an all-caps line as a heading. Suppressed when at the start of an input line, it otherwise generates a plain ampersand.	N/A
col 1 only	<code>\h heading</code>	Explicit section heading for use when lowercase characters are required.	N/A
col 1 only	<code>\sh heading</code>	Subheading, always mixed case with initial caps.	.SS heading
inline	<code>'text'</code> or <code>'text'</code>	Bold text, for literal names: filenames, commands, keywords, global variables, structure members, and so on. Text can be multiple words if on the same input line.	same
inline	<code><text></code>	Italic text, for arguments, placeholders, emphasis, special terms. Text can be multiple words if on the same input line.	same
inline	<code>\lib library</code>	Explicit markup for a library name if the name is non-standard (not <i>nameLib</i> , <i>nameDrv</i> , <i>nameShow</i> , <i>nameSio</i> , or <i>if_name</i>).	N/A
col 1 only	<code>\tb booktitle</code>	The remainder of the line is a book title reference.	.I, .pG, .tG

Table B-5 **Apigen Markup** (cont'd)

Location	Markup	Description	MangenEquiv.
inline	<code>\< \> \' \'</code>	Plain characters <, >, `, and `.	N/A
inline	<code>\\</code>	Plain character \ (backslash).	<code>\e</code>
col 1 only	<code>\cs</code> ... <code>\ce</code>	Code example or terminal session—preformatted display in fixed-width.	<code>.CS</code> ... <code>.CE</code>
col 1 only	<code>\bs</code> ... <code>\be</code>	Board diagram—preformatted display in reduced fixed-width.	<code>.bS</code> ... <code>.bE</code>
col 1 only	<code>\ss</code> ... <code>\se</code>	Syntax display—preformatted display in fixed-width font and containing markup.	<code>.tS</code> ... <code>.tE</code>
col 1 only	<code>\is</code> <code>\i item</code> <code>\ie</code>	Item list, also known as a definition list. Each item is a word or phrase followed by an explanation starting on the next line.	<code>.iP</code> or <code>.IP</code>
col 1 only	<code>\ms</code> <code>\m mark</code> <code>\me</code>	Numbered or dash list (marker list). ^a	<code>.iP</code> or <code>.IP</code>
col 1 only	<code>\ts</code> ... <code>\te</code>	Table	<code>.TS</code> ... <code>.TE</code>
inline		Column delimiter in a table.	N/A
inline	<code>\ </code>	The character in a table.	N/A
col 1 only	<code>\"</code>	Comment, ignored by apigen .	N/A

a. Note that the syntax for starting a marker list was formerly documented as `\ml`. This value continues to work with current releases of **apigen** but the `\ms` syntax is preferred and should be used in any new development.

B

Punctuation and Spelling

Quotation Marks

If quotation marks really are necessary in text, always type a straight double-quote ("). Do not form quotation marks with pairs of single quotes (an old **troff** convention).

Dash

Form a dash by typing two successive hyphens. Do not separate the dash from text with space characters.

Headings

Headings must be in all uppercase; **apigen** interprets either of the following types of input as a heading:

- A group of all-uppercase words on a line by itself. Underscores and numbers are also permitted. For example:

```
THIS IS A HEADING  
This is the text that follows....
```

- A group of all-uppercase words at the start of a line and followed by a colon, optionally followed by non-heading text on the same line. For example:

```
THIS IS A HEADING: This is the text that follows....
```

In special cases where such input should not be interpreted as a heading, the words can be preceded with `\&`. For example:

```
\&THIS IS NOT A HEADING
```

Occasionally, it is necessary to include lowercase letters in a heading. For such exceptions, use the `\h` tag. For example:

```
\h ARCHITECTURE NOTE FOR x86  
This is the text that follows...
```

Longer reference entries sometimes call for subheadings. Type subheadings in mixed-case on a separate line and apply the `\sh` tag. Capitalize words following standard capitalization practices for mixed-case headings.¹ For example:

```
\sh Title for a Subheading  
This is the text that follows...
```

1. Standard practice: always capitalize the first and last word, and capitalize all other words except articles, prepositions, short conjunctions (fewer than five letters), and the word *to*.

Special Words

Literal Names of Commands, Global Variables, Files, and Other Elements

The literal names of many system elements are automatically made bold:

- words ending in an empty pair of parentheses (routine names)
- words ending in `.c`, `.h`, `.o`, and `.tcl` (file types)
- words ending in **Lib**, **Drv**, **Show**, or **Sio** (library names)
- words beginning with `if_` (network interface library names)
- words in all uppercase with one or more underscore characters (constants)
- words that begin with `S_` and end with an uppercase string (errno names)

Set off all other literal names with single quotes (`'`). These include filenames, tools, commands, operators, C keywords, global variables, structure members, network interfaces, and so on.

Example input:

```
When semTake() returns due to timeout, it sets 'errno' to
S_objLib_OBJ_TIMEOUT (defined in objLib.h).
```

Resulting output:

```
When semTake() returns due to timeout, it sets errno to
S_objLib_OBJ_TIMEOUT (defined in objLib.h).
```

Some library names do not end in the standard suffixes listed above. Flag such names with the `\lib` tag. Note that unlike all other tags, the `\lib` tag can be inline. For example:

```
The interface between BSD IP and the MUX is described in \lib ipProto.
```

Terminal Keys

Enter the names of terminal keys in all uppercase. For example: **RETURN**, **ESC**. Prefix the names of control characters with **CTRL+**. For example: **CTRL+C**.

Routine Names

Include parentheses with all routine names. Do not separate the parentheses from the name with a space character (unlike the Wind River convention for code). Do not put a space between the parentheses.

CORRECT: `taskSpawn()`

INCORRECT: `taskSpawn()`, `taskSpawn ()`, `taskSpawn`

Even routines generally construed as VxWorks or host shell “shell commands” must include the parentheses.

Note that there is one major exception to the parentheses rule: in the routine title, do not include the parentheses in the name of the routine being defined:

```
CORRECT:      /******  
               *  
               * xxxFunc - do such and such
```

```
INCORRECT:   /******  
               *  
               * xxxFunc() - do such and such
```

Avoid using the name of a routine (or library, command, or other facility) as the first word in a sentence. Names are case-specific and capitalization must never be changed.

Placeholder Text

A *placeholder* (also known as a *text variable*) is a word that represents a value that is to be supplied by the user, such as a command argument, routine parameter, or a portion of a directory path. Text variables are employed most frequently in syntax displays or pathnames. Surround placeholder words with the angle brackets < and >. In the following example, *hostOs* is a value supplied by the reader:

```
The script is located in the directory 'host/<hostOs>/bin'.
```

Resulting output:

```
The script is located in the directory host/hostOs/bin.
```

Parameters

When referring to routine parameters, treat them as placeholders; that is, bracket the argument name with the angle brackets < and >. For example, consider a routine **getName()** with the following declaration:

```
VOID getName  
(  
    int    tid,      /* task ID */  
    char * pTname   /* task name */  
)
```

For the description, you might say something like the following:

```
This routine fetches the name associated with the specified task ID <tid>  
and copies it to <pTname>.
```




NOTE: Although C routine parameters are variables from the perspective of the code's author, they are placeholders from the perspective of the user; therefore we format them as any other placeholder and apply angle brackets. Note, however, that global variables and structure members should be treated as literals, not placeholders; see *Literal Names of Commands, Global Variables, Files, and Other Elements*, p.173.

Book References

References to books or book chapters should be tagged with `\tb`, which sets them in italics. For more information about standards for book references, see [SEE ALSO Section](#), p.165. Example input:

```
For more information, see the
\tb VxWorks Programmer's Guide: I/O System.
```

Resulting output:

For more information, see the *VxWorks Kernel Programmer's Guide: I/O System*.

Cross-References to Other Reference Entries

Do not use the UNIX-style parentheses-plus-number scheme to cross-reference the documentation sections for libraries and routines:

CORRECT: `sysLib, vxTas()`

INCORRECT: `sysLib(1), vxTas(2)`

Special Terms

When introducing or defining a special term, bracket the word in angle brackets (< and >) at first usage. In output, these words appear in italics.

Emphasis

In general, avoid applying emphasis to words; a well-cast sentence should be sufficient to convey emphasis. However, if emphasizing a word is necessary, bracket it with the angle brackets (< and >). In output, these words appear in italics. Never use uppercase to convey emphasis.

Table 3 Examples of Special Word Formatting

Component	Input	Output
library in title	sysLib.c	sysLib
library in text	sysLib	sysLib
name with .c extension	sysLib.c	sysLib.c
header file	objLib.h	objLib.h
routine in title	sysMemTop	sysMemTop()
routine in text	sysMemTop()	sysMemTop()
constant, option	INCLUDE_SCSI	INCLUDE_SCSI
other bold elements	'errno'	errno
placeholder, routine parameter	<ptid>	<i>ptid</i>
book title	\tb Programmer's Guide	<i>Programmer's Guide</i>
emphasis, special terms	<must>	<i>must</i>

Lists and Tables



NOTE: Do not use the \cs and \ce tags to build lists or tables.



CAUTION: Nesting of lists is not supported.

Short Word Lists

A simple list of words or short phrases can be created simply by putting each word on a line by itself and indenting it with space characters. Any line that begins with

a space causes a line breaks to be preserved for that line only. The line remains part of the paragraph, and so no vertical space is added.

Example input:

```
The first three words in the international phonetic alphabet are:  
  alpha  
  bravo  
  charlie
```

Resulting output:

```
The first three words in the international phonetic alphabet are:  
  alpha  
  bravo  
  charlie
```

Do not use this mechanism for line items that contain more than three words.

Item Lists (Definition Lists or Terms Lists)

Item lists, also known a *definition lists* and *terms lists*, are lists of special elements—parameters, constants, routines, commands, and so on—and their descriptions. Introduce an item list with the `\is` tag. Tag each item name with the `\i` tag, and type the description on the following line. End the list with `\ie`. To preserve the readability of the input, separate each item with a blank line; the items are separated by blank space in the output, regardless. Example input:

```
\is  
\i 'FIODISKFORMAT'  
Formats the entire disk with appropriate hardware track and  
sector marks. No file system is initialized on the disk by  
this request.  
  
\i 'FIODISKINIT'  
Initializes a DOS file system on the disk volume.  
\ie
```

Resulting output:

FIODISKFORMAT

Formats the entire disk with appropriate hardware track and sector marks. No file system is initialized on the disk by this request.

FIODISKINIT

Initializes a DOS file system on the disk volume.

Marker Lists (Dash or Numbered Lists)

Use the marker list tags to create lists with a specified “mark,” typically a number or hyphen (**apigen** does not recognize any symbol for a bullet or en- or em-dash).

Introduce a marker list with the `\ml` tag. Tag each number or hyphen with the `\m` tag, and type the text on the following line. End it with `\me`.

Example input:

```
\ml
\m 1.
Design the program.
\m 2.
Write the code.
\m 3.
Test the system.
\me
```

Resulting output:

1. Design the program.
2. Write the code.
3. Test the system.



NOTE: The syntax for starting a marker list was formerly documented as `\ml`. This value continues to work with current releases of **apigen** but the `\ms` syntax is preferred and should be used in any new development.

Tables

Start a table with the `\ts` tag and end it with `\te`. The following conventions describe how tables should be formatted:

- Tables have a heading section and a body section; these are delimited by a horizontal line containing only the characters - (hyphen), + (plus), and | (pipe or bar).
- Table columns are delimited with the bar (|) character. To output a literal | character, escape it with a backslash (\ |). Align columns visually so that input is easy to read and maintain.
- A newline marks the end of a row in either the heading or body.

Example input:

```
\ts
Key | Name          | Meaning
----|-----+-----
\& | ampersand      | bitwise AND
\| | pipe / bar     | bitwise OR
#  | pound sign    | bitwise NAND
\te
```

Resulting output:

Key	Name	Meaning
&	ampersand	bitwise AND
	pipe / bar	bitwise OR
#	pound sign	bitwise NAND

Code Examples, Syntax Displays, and Diagrams

B

Code Examples

Display code or terminal input/output with the `\cs` and `\ce` tags.

Text between these tags is interpreted as preformatted text; therefore, markup such as angle brackets (`<` and `>`) and backslashes (`\`) is not interpreted, but passed through as typed. Thus markup characters must not be escaped with a backslash.

The one exception is that `/@` and `@/` are converted to `/*` and `*/`. In C files, all example comments should be bracketed with `/@` and `@/`. C compilers are generally unfriendly toward nested comments.

Code displays should be indented by four spaces from column 1. The following example shows how a code example would appear in a C routine section:

```
* \cs
*   /@ Get file status information @/
*
*   struct stat statStruct;
*   fd = open ("file", READ);
*   status = ioctl (fd, FIOFSTATGET, &statStruct);
* \ce
*
```

Resulting output:

```
/* Get file status information */

struct stat statStruct;
fd = open ("file", READ);
status = ioctl (fd, FIOFSTATGET, &statStruct);
```

Because backslashes are not interpreted as an escape in `\cs` blocks, the backslash itself must *not* be escaped. For example:

```
\cs
-> copy < DOS1:\subdir\file1
\ce
```

Resulting output:

```
-> copy < DOS1:\subdir\file1
```

The `\cs` and `\ce` tags can also serve as a general mechanism for creating ASCII diagrams.

Command Syntax

Set off command syntax (for example, in shell scripts or Tcl procedures) with the `\ss` and `\se` tags. Although nearly the same as a `\cs` block, the `\ss` block gives different results. In contrast to `\cs`, angle-bracket markup (`<` and `>`) is interpreted within an `\ss` block, as long as the angle brackets surround and touch a word.

Example input:

```
\ss
deflate < <infile> > <outfile>
\se
```

Resulting output:

```
deflate < infile > outfile
```

Board Diagrams

Board diagrams are required for the BOARD LAYOUT section of a BSP's **target.ref** file.

In VxWorks 5.5, board diagrams are typically provided in plain-text format. Bracket plain-text board diagrams with the `\bs` and `\be` tags. Start a diagram with `\bs`; end it with `\be`.

For VxWorks 6.x BSPs, you strongly are encouraged to include a JPEG image file in place of the plain-text board diagram (although the plain-text style is still acceptable). If you include an image file, Wind River provides the following guidelines:

- Include you image in a **/images** directory in your BSP directory.
- Label the location of the console port, network port, and power socket in your image.



NOTE: The image notation should include text describing the port as well as a circle (in white or black) surrounding the port or an arrow (in white or black) pointing to the connector.

- If ports are stacked, be sure that your notation includes a description of which port is the relevant one (for example, "serial console (top connector)").
- Do not label jumper locations in your image unless your board is not silk-screened or the silk-screen does not include jumper labels.

To include your JPEG image in the HTML output of the **target.ref** file, use the **\IMAGE apigen** directive. For more information, see [Graphics](#), p.181.



NOTE: VxWorks 5.5 users can also include a JPEG image in place of the plain-text diagram as described above. However, the **\IMAGE** directive is not available in **refgen**, so you must include a text reference to the location of the JPEG file manually.

Graphics

B

VxWorks 6.x users can insert graphics files using the directive **\IMAGE filename**. If the output format is HTML, this image file is inserted into an **** tag. If the output format is anything else, the file is referenced by name in the text. The path of *filename* must be relative to the directory containing the source file. Currently this directive is used only in BSP **target.ref** files. Examples:

```
\IMAGE images/board.jpg  
\IMAGE images/switches.gif
```

B.6 Directives

Directives are **apigen** controls for special non-formatting actions, such as including information from other files, hiding internal information, or overriding default behavior. This section provides information about the **apigen** directives available for BSP documentation.

Directives must begin in column 1, and must be the only text on the line. All directives begin with a backslash and the remaining letters are in upper case.

The backslash is a significant deviation from **refgen**, **apigen**'s predecessor. Most **refgen** directives required no backslash. However, the backslash requirement makes the markup considerably more resistant to ambiguities.



NOTE: For backward compatibility, directives that were supported by **refgen** are by default converted internally to the new form, and thus still work. However, they should be changed when encountered and avoided in future work.

The directives recognized by **apigen** are summarized in [Table B-6](#). Details are provided in the sections that follow.

Table B-6 Summary of apigen Directives

Directive Name	Usage
<code>\IMAGE filename</code>	Include an image (a reference to an image file) in the output—normally used only for BSP board diagrams. This directive is available for apigen only.
<code>\INTERNAL [title]</code>	Do not print the following title and section unless the -internal flag is specified when apigen is executed. If no <i>title</i> is given, the title is “INTERNAL”.
<code>\NOMANUAL</code>	Do not generate this routine or library entry unless the -internal flag is specified.
<code>\TITLE name - shortdescription</code>	Overrides the file’s title line. Typically used only in target.ref files. This directive must include a backslash in both apigen and refgen .

Blocking Text from Publication

The following directives can be used to prevent the publication of specified sections of text. In all cases, the masking action can be overridden by running **apigen** with the **-internal** flag. This flag permits all content to be generated, including C routines declared **static** or **LOCAL**, which are masked automatically. The **-internal** flag is typically given to generate documentation for company-internal code reviews.

Note that these directives should not be used to suppress the publication of an entire file. The standard way to prevent a file from being processed is to omit it from the Wind River makefile variable **DOC_FILES**.

`\INTERNAL [title]`

This directive specifies that the following section is internal documentation and should not be output. An internal section ends with the next heading or the end of the comment block. If *title* is specified, it becomes the section title if **apigen** is run with **-internal**; otherwise the section title is “INTERNAL”.

Examples:

```
\INTERNAL  
\INTERNAL IMPLEMENTATION DETAILS
```


\NOMANUAL

This directive suppresses the entire comment block of a routine or library in which it occurs. Routines that are declared **static** or **LOCAL** are automatically **\NOMANUAL**. If all routines in a library are **\NOMANUAL**, **static**, or **LOCAL**, the **ROUTINES** section of the library entry is generated with the message “No user-callable routines”.

Use of this directive in a library section is rare. Putting **\NOMANUAL** in a library section does not make its routines internal. The standard way to prevent an entire file from being processed is to omit it from a makefile variable.

Example:

```
/******  
*  
* stateReset - reset the state machine  
*  
* This routine returns the internal state to it initial state.  
* It should not be called by users.  
* . . .  
* \NOMANUAL  
*/
```

Although the **\NOMANUAL** line is interpreted regardless of where it appears, the standard practice is to place it at the end of the comment block.

Other Overrides

\TITLE *name - shortdescription*

The **\TITLE** directive replaces a file’s title line (the title in the file’s first comment block) with whatever follows the directive. Currently it is used exclusively in BSPs to give the file a more descriptive name than **target.ref**. The new name is used in searching for possible hyperlinks to the output file, but does not affect the name of the output file. Example:

```
\TITLE pc386/486 - BSP for PC 386/486
```



NOTE: This directive must include the backslash in both **apigen** and **refgen**.

Image Files

The `\IMAGE` directive provides a means for including an image from another file.

`\IMAGE filename`

This directive specifies an image file. If the output format is HTML, this image file is inserted into an `` tag. If the output format is anything else, the file is referenced by name in the text. The path of *filename* must be relative to the directory containing the source file. Typically this directive is used only in the **target.ref** files of BSPs. Examples:

```
\IMAGE images/board.jpg
\IMAGE images/switches.gif
```



NOTE: This directive is available in **apigen** only.

B.7 Converting target.nr Files

Beginning with VxWorks 6.0, the target-information file has a new name and a new format. The file **target.nr** has been renamed **target.ref** and is formatted with **apigen** markup language instead of **nroff**/**troff** markup.

In a UNIX installation of VxWorks, you can convert existing **target.nr** files by running the shell script **mg2ref** as follows:

```
% /host/host/bin/mg2ref target.nr
```

This generates a **target.ref** file in the current directory.

In a Windows installation of VxWorks, you can convert existing **target.nr** files by running the Tcl script **mg2ref.tcl** as follows:

```
c:\> host\x86-win32\bin\mg2ref.bat target.nr
```

This generates a **target.ref** file in the current directory.

The resulting **target.ref** files require some cleanup, however minimal. Tables always require that columns be manually aligned using the column delimiter (pipe character, |). If the **target.nr** included nroff-style column format commands, these are not removed and must be removed manually.

In addition, **mg2ref** also leaves a `\TITLE` directive just below the initial comment block. Both **apigen** and **refgen** create the NAME line based on information from

the `\TITLE` directive, if it exists, or information from line 1 of the file, if `\TITLE` does not exist. A manually typed NAME section is never used.

Always inspect the `target.ref` generated by `mg2ref` and test your changes by running it through `apigen`.

For backward compatibility, the makefile system for generating VxWorks 6.x BSP documentation is set up to look first for `target.ref`; if `target.ref` is not found, it instead processes `target.nr`.

B.8 Generating Reference Entries

This section discusses the mechanics of generating BSP documentation: the files and tools used, the text formatting tags, and the makefile system used to process documentation from source code to printable reference entries.

Files

Filename extensions indicate the following types of files:

- `.s` assembly-language source files.
- `.c` C-language source files.
- `.ref` text file containing `apigen` markup.
- `.nr` text file containing `mangen` markup (no longer used)
- `.html` generated HTML file.

`installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname`

This directory contains the C and assembly sources and documentation sources for a particular BSP; `bspname` is a directory name reflecting the maker and model of the board. For example: `mv2603` = Motorola MVME2603. The files relevant to documentation are:

Makefile

Master makefile for building BSP and VxWorks modules. Three constants must be defined for documentation: `TARGET_DIR`, `VENDOR`, and `BOARD`. See *Processing*, p.187, for more information.

sysLib.c

Library of board-dependent C routines.

target.ref

Source for the target-information reference entry, containing general information about a board's installation requirements or capabilities as they relate to VxWorks. Note that this file replaces the **target.nr** file of previous releases; however, BSP makefiles beginning with VxWorks 5.5 can also recognize and process **target.nr** files for backward compatibility. If both files exist, the make system gives precedence to **target.ref**.

docs/.../bspname

The generated HTML reference-entry files for BSPs are output to the **docs/extensions/eclipse/plugins/com.windriver.ide.doc.vxworks_6.x/vxworks_bsp_api_reference_6.x/bspname** directory for VxWorks 6.x (or the **docs/vxworks/bsp/bspname** directory in VxWorks 5.5). All files are generated from the source files in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname* by the make process, which runs **apigen** (or **refgen -mg** for VxWorks 5.5). The files are:

bspname.html

Target-information reference entry generated from **target.ref** (or **target.nr**). As shown in the following example, you must include **/target.ref** after *bspname* to generate this file correctly:

```
\ " bspname/target.ref - BSP target specific documentation
```

sysLib.html

Reference entry for **sysLib.c**.

libIndex.html

Index of the BSP's library-level reference entries.

rtnIndex.html

Index of the BSP's routine reference entries.

sysTffs.html (optional, VxWorks 6.x only)

Reference entries for TrueFFS, if installed.

Tools

host/host/bin/apigen

The **apigen** tool is a Perl script (**refgen** is a Tcl script) that generates HTML files from specially formatted source code, which may be C language modules, assembly language modules, **target.ref** files, or **target.nr** files. The command-line syntax and options for **apigen** are summarized in the reference entry.

Processing

The steps below describe how to generate BSP documentation using the makefiles based on the templates delivered with the VxWorks.

1. In `installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/bspname`, check for the existence of the three required constants in **Makefile**:

TARGET_DIR

target directory name (*bspname*). For example: "mv2603"

VENDOR

vendor name. For example: "Motorola"

BOARD

board model name. For example: "MVME2600"

2. Generate the reference entries by running the following command in the BSP directory:

```
make man
```

This does the following:

- Builds an appropriate **depend**.*bspname*.
- Runs **sysLib.c** through the C preprocessor to collect any drivers included by **#include** directives.
- Runs **sysTffs.c** through the C preprocessor (if applicable).
- Runs **apigen** (or **refgen -mg**) on **sysLib.c** (output of the previous step) and **target.ref** (or **target.nr** if no **target.ref** is present).



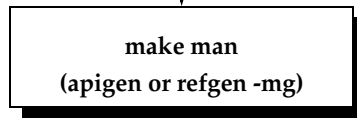
NOTE: **refgen** requires the **-mg** option for backward compatibility in case there are files with old-style nroff markup.

- Distributes HTML reference entries to the appropriate **docs** directories.

The flow chart in [Figure B-1](#) shows how the make process distributes BSP reference entries in the **docs** directory.

Figure B-1 **Production Flow for BSP Documentation**

target/config/bspname



docs/.../bspname



C

BSP Validation Test Suite

- [C.1 Introduction 189](#)
- [C.2 Test Framework Overview 190](#)
- [C.3 Validating Your BSP 199](#)

C.1 Introduction

The VxWorks board support package validation test suite (BSP VTS) is a collection of host-initiated test scripts that exercise a target board running VxWorks. The purpose of this test suite is to provide an objective (although not exhaustive) report that you can use to judge the basic functionality of your VxWorks board support package (BSP).

The BSP VTS uses a test framework that allows you to automatically test a new BSP on your custom hardware. The test framework provides a set of command line scripts that allow you to:

- Configure a set of tests, hosts, and boards.
- Build test images for your target hardware.
- Execute the tests on your hardware.
- Analyze the results of your test to assess the functionality of your BSP.

Wind River provides a set of tests to run in this test framework. These tests allow you to get a quick understanding of the state of your BSP. The tests exercise the basic functionality of a BSP (for more information on specific test modules, see [C.3 Validating Your BSP](#), p.199).

C.2 Test Framework Overview

For the purposes of this chapter, a *test suite* is a collection of *test modules* that can be run on a set of target boards. As a tester, you can use a pre-defined test suite or you can define your own test suite. The *test framework* provided by Wind River allows you to define multiple test suites. This section describes the scripts and files that make up the test framework and the output files generated by the test suite. Specific instructions for running the pre-defined Wind River BSP VTS are provided in [C.3 Validating Your BSP](#), p.199.

C.2.1 Directory Structure

The overall directory structure for the test framework files and scripts is shown in [Figure C-1](#). For more detailed information on the test suite scripts and files, see [C.2.2 Test Files and Scripts](#), p.190.

C.2.2 Test Files and Scripts

The section describes the files and scripts that make up the BSP VTS test framework.

suite.prm

The suite parameter file, *suite.prm* (where *suite* is the name of the test suite), is located in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/src/config/*. The file is used by the **suiteConfig** script to define the set of test modules that are included in the test suite for a given test.

suiteConfig

Given a test suite name (*suite*), the **suiteConfig** script reads the test suite parameter file (*installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/src/config/suite.prm*) and any test modules

➔ **NOTE:** To access the help files for any test script, execute the scripts with the **-help** command-line option. The help files provide the most current information for the test scripts.

passed on the command line when it is invoked. The script also creates an *image test configuration* (ITC) file. The ITC file is an intermediate file used to pass the test configuration information found in the test modules to the **suiteBuild** script (see [suiteBuild](#), p. 195) and the test driver that runs on your target board.

Usage for this script is as follows:

```
vxtest suiteConfig -suite suite -test test ... -help
```

where *suite* is the name of the test suite you wish to configure and *test* is the name of a C test module that you wish to add to the test suite.

If a suite parameter file (*suite.prm*) exists for a given test suite, the modules listed on the command line are added to modules included in the suite parameter file. If no suite parameter file exists for a given suite, only those modules provided on the command line are added to the test suite. The script uses this information to generate the ITC file (located in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/\$USER/itc/suite.itc*).

➔ **NOTE:** Test modules are executed in the order they appear in the command line, then in the order listed in the *suite.prm* file. Test cases within each test module are executed in the order that they appear in the test module.

Available command line options for **suiteConfig** are as follows:

-suite

Specifies the test suite name. This parameter is also the base name of the input file (*suite.prm*) and the output ITC file (*suite.itc*). If a *suite.prm* file exists in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/src/config/*, the file is scanned for a list of test modules to include in the test suite.

-test (optional)

Specifies a test module to be added to the test suite.

-help (optional)

Displays help information for the **suiteConfig**.

board.prm

The board parameter file, *board.prm* (where *board* is the name of the target board), is located in *\$HOME/vxtestParamFiles/boards/* (where *\$HOME* is derived from the host environment variables; *\$HOME* on Solaris and Linux, *\$HOMEDRIVE*

`$HOMEPATH` on Windows). This file is used to manage target parameters such as IP address, netmask, boot device, and so forth for a given target board.

boardConfig

The **boardConfig** script is used to generate a template board parameter file (`$HOME/vxtestParamFiles/boards/board.prm`) that you can then manually update to suit your target board.

Usage for this script is as follows:

```
vxtest boardConfig -template template ... -help
```

where *template* is the base name of the **.prm** file for your test board.

Available command line options for **boardConfig** are as follows:

-template

Specifies the base name for the generated template file. This option can be specified multiple times to generate multiple template files.

-help (optional)

Displays help information for the **boardConfig**.

host.prm

The host parameter file, *host.prm* (where *host* is the name of the host), is located in `$HOME/vxtestParamFiles/hosts/` (where `$HOME` is derived from the host environment variables; `$HOME` on Solaris and Linux, `$HOMEDRIVE\ $HOMEPATH` on Windows). This file is used to manage host configuration parameters such as host name, IP address, and the user name and password for the host. This file can be created in the following ways:

- If your VxWorks image will be downloaded from the same host you are running the test suite on, an appropriate *host.prm* file is generated automatically by the **suiteRun** script (if one does not already exist).
- If your VxWorks image will be downloaded from the same host you are running the test suite on but you wish to override certain host parameters such as user name or password, you can use the **hostConfig** script to generate an appropriate *host.prm* file.
- You can manually update any existing *host.prm* file to suit your desired host.

hostConfig

The **hostConfig** script is used to create a new *host.prm* file in `$HOME/vxtestParamFiles/hosts/`. You only need to run the **hostConfig** script if you wish to download your VxWorks image from a host other than the host used to execute the test scripts, or if you wish to override the default values for certain host parameters such as IP address, user name, or password.

Usage for this script is as follows:

```
vxtest hostConfig -host host -hostIp hostIp -user user -password password -help
```

where *host* is the base name of the *.prm* file for your test board and *hostIp*, *user*, and *password* are, respectively, the desired IP address, user name, and password for the host.

Available command line options for **hostConfig** are as follows:

-host (optional)

Specifies the base name for the host parameter file (*host.prm*). The default value for this option is the current host name as derived from the host environment variables.



NOTE: If the host name is specified on the command line using the **-host** option, the host IP address must be specified using **-hostIp**.

-hostIp (optional)

Specifies the IP address for the host. The default value for this option is the current host IP address as determined by attempting to open a socket to the target or parsing the output from the **ifconfig** command (**ipconfig** on Windows hosts).



NOTE: If the host IP address is specified on the command line using the **-hostIp** option, the host name must also be specified on the command line using the **-host** option.

-user (optional)

Specifies the user name to be used for FTP or RSH downloads of the VxWorks test image. The default value is **target**.

-password (optional)

Specifies the password to be used for FTP or RSH downloads of the VxWorks test image. The default value is **vxTarget**. To specify RSH transfers, use the **-password** option with "." as follows:

```
-password .
```



NOTE: Passwords are stored as clear text.

-help (optional)
Displays help information for the **hostConfig**.

suiteBuild

Given a test suite name (*suite*) and one or more BSP (*bsp*), compiler (*tool*), board (*board*), and (optionally) VxWorks configuration profile (*profile*) combinations, the **suiteBuild** script builds a VxWorks image (**vxWorks**) for each specified combination in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/\$USER/proj/suite/bsp.tool.board.profile*. The **suiteBuild** script adds all of the run-time components that are necessary to run all test modules in the test suite. The script also builds the required test modules and the target-based test driver. The test modules and driver are linked directly to the VxWorks image so that no downloading is required during the test.

Usage for this script is as follows:

```
vxtest suiteBuild -suite suite -bspToolBoard bsp tool board ... -profile profile  
... -logFolder logFolder -v -help
```

where *suite* is the name of the test suite, *bsp* is the name of the BSP you wish to test (for example, **pcPentium**), *tool* is the name of the toolchain you want to use in the build (for example, **gnu**), and *board* is the base name of a board parameter file (and optional CDF file) that is used whenever an image is built for a given board specified by *board* (see *board.prm*, p.192). The profile parameter (*profile*) is optional and is the name of the VxWorks configuration profile that you want to base your build on (for more information on VxWorks configuration profiles, see the *VxWorks Kernel Programmer's Guide: Kernel*).



NOTE: The **suiteBuild** script looks for the *board.cdf* file in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/src/config/boardCDF/*. If the file exists, the CDF file is copied into the project and used for the project build. The base name for your board parameter file (*board.prm*) and the board CDF file should be the same. This creates an obvious association between the files and makes the *board* parameter consistent between **suiteBuild** and **suiteRun** (see *suiteRun*, p.196).

This command builds the required test modules and creates an image with the necessary components and test modules specified in the ITC file for the test suite (see *suiteConfig*, p.190). This test project is located in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/\$USER/proj/suite/bsp.tool.board.profile/*. Detailed log files for the build are provided in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/\$USER/logs/suite/default*.

Available command line options for **suiteBuild** are as follows:

-suite

Specifies the test suite name for the test suite you wish to build.

-bspToolBoard

Specifies the BSP, toolchain, and the board parameter file you wish to use for your build. This option can be specified multiple times to include multiple BSP, toolchain, and board combinations.



NOTE: If a matching board CDF file (that is, a CDF file with the same base name as the board parameter file) exists, this CDF file is used as part of your build.



NOTE: Because they do not include a target shell, the VxWorks configuration profiles **PROFILE_BASIC_KERNEL**, **PROFILE_BASIC_OS**, and **PROFILE_MINIMAL_KERNEL** are not currently supported by the BSP VTS.

-profile (optional)

Specifies the VxWorks configuration profile to use for this build. The default value for *profile* is **profile_default**.

-logFolder (optional)

Specifies a sub-directory name for the log files. This directory is added under *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/\$USER/logs/suite/*. The default value for *logFolder* is **default**.

-help (optional)

Displays help information for the **suiteBuild**.

suiteRun

Given a test suite name (*suite*) and one or more BSP (*bsp*), compiler (*tool*), target board (*board*), and (optionally) VxWorks configuration profile (*profile*) combinations, the **suiteRun** script executes the test suite using all specified combinations.

Usage for this script is as follows:

```
vxtest suiteRun -suite suite -bspToolBoard bsp tool board ... -profile profile ...  
-host host -logFolder logFolder -nographical -prompt -help
```

where *suite* is the name of the test suite, *bsp* is the BSP name (this is the name of the BSP directory in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/*), *tool* is the toolchain you wish to use for the test, *board* is the base name for the board parameter file of the board you wish to test (this corresponds to the parameter passed with the

-template option in the **boardConfig** script), and **host** is the base name of the host parameter file for the host from which you will download the VxWorks test image.

If there are multiple *bsp/tool/board* combinations, the test suite runs in parallel on all combinations. The suite name (*suite*), BSP (*bsp*), compiler (*tool*), and (optionally) VxWorks configuration profile (*profile*) values are used to locate the test **vxWorks** image (as built by **suiteBuild**). The board parameters are provided by *board.prm*. The host parameters are provided by *host.prm*, where the default host is the host on which **suiteRun** is executed. You can override the default host using the **-host** option. To accommodate boot ROMs that cannot handle long path names to the image, **suiteRun** copies the test images to *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/\$USER/img/n/*, where *n* is a unique number and provides the new path to the boot shell.

On all hosts, a terminal window opens to show test activity for each board. When testing of the board is complete, the window closes unless there is a test script failure. When all tests are complete, a summary of test results is displayed in the terminal window where the script was executed.

Available command line options for **suiteRun** are as follows:

-suite

Specifies the test suite name for the test suite you want to execute.

-bspToolBoard

Specifies the BSP, toolchain, and board combination to test. This option can be specified multiple times to include multiple BSP and toolchain combinations.

-profile (optional, unless specified to **suiteBuild**)

Specifies the VxWorks configuration profile to use for this build. The default value for *profile* is **profile_default**. If more than one configuration profile value is specified, **suiteRun** performs the parallel execution of all *bsp/tool/board* images for each of the profiles in sequence.



NOTE: If you specify a VxWorks configuration profile for the **suiteBuild** script (using the **-profile** option), you must specify the same profile for **suiteRun**.



NOTE: Because they do not include a target shell, the VxWorks configuration profiles **PROFILE_BASIC_KERNEL**, **PROFILE_BASIC_OS**, and **PROFILE_MINIMAL_KERNEL** are not currently supported by the BSP VTS.

-logFolder (optional)

Specifies a sub-directory name for the log files. This directory is added under *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/\$USER/logs/suite/*. The default value for *logFolder* is **default**.

-host (optional)

Specifies the base name of the host parameter file you wish to use for this test suite run. If this option is not specified, a host parameter file is generated for the current host (if one does not already exist) and the current host parameter file is used for the test suite run.

-nographical (optional)

Disables the terminal window pop ups for each board that is tested.

-prompt (optional)

Forces the test shell windows to remain open until the user presses **Enter** (or **Return**), even when the test script for a given board returns a zero exit code. If this option is not specified, the shell window only remains open when a non-zero exit code is returned.



NOTE: A non-zero exit code indicates a test script failure. This is not the same as a test case failure. In this case, the failure is with the script itself, not what the script is attempting to test.

-help (optional)

Displays help information for the **suiteRun**.

suiteResults

Given a test suite name (*suite*), the **suiteResults** script scans the test suite log files (***.test.log**) and produces either a high level summary, or a more detailed account (using the **-v** option), of the test results. Optionally, an HTML report can be created in any directory (using the **-htmlDir** option).

Usage for this script is as follows:

```
vxtest suiteResults -suite suite -htmlDir htmlDir -logFolder logFolder -v -help
```

Available command line options for **suiteResults** are as follows:

-suite

Specifies the test suite name for the test suite you want to summarize.

-htmlDir (optional)

Creates a report in HTML format in the specified directory, *htmlDir/suiteResults.html*.

-logFolder (optional)

Specifies a sub-directory name for the log files. This directory is added under *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/\$USER/logs/suitel*. The default value for *logFolder* is **default**.

-v (optional)

Displays a list of failed tests in addition to the summarized results.

-help (optional)

Displays help information for the **suiteResults**.

Log Files

Build and test logs are provided in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/\$USER/logs/suitellogFolder/* where the directory name *logFolder* can be set as an optional parameter using the **-logFolder** option (the default name is **default**). Logs from prior identical build and test runs (that is, the same *installDir* and *\$USER* as well as the same **-suite**, **-logFolder**, **-bspToolBoard**, and **-profile** options) are removed or overwritten for each **suiteRun** invocation. This behavior is intended to eliminate the accumulation of old log files and the confusion associated with managing test suite results for multiple identical test runs. By using the **-logFolder** option with the **suiteBuild** and **suiteRun** scripts, you can direct the results from multiple identical test runs to different output folders thus allowing you to preserve information from prior test runs.

C.3 Validating Your BSP

This section describes how to validate your VxWorks BSP using the pre-defined BSP validation test suite, **bspvts**. It also provides guidelines for adding your own test suite to the test framework.

Host and Target Requirements

The BSP validation test suite has the following host and target requirements:

- a Linux, Solaris, or Windows host supported for VxWorks OS development (see your product release notes for a list of supported hosts)
- a full installation of the VxWorks operating system
- the ActiveState ActiveTcl application (Windows hosts only)
- the target hardware used for the test must boot with a VxWorks boot ROM

- a serial port connection to the target console port
- FTP or TFTP access to the host from the target
- the host must authorize FTP read transfers from the user **target** with a password of **vxTarget** (this is used to download the **vxWorks** image)

Installation

The BSP VTS is installed as part of the standard VxWorks operating system product installation, no additional installation steps are required.

C.3.1 Set Your Host Environment

Before running any test suite using the test suite framework, you must properly set your host environment.

Solaris and Linux Hosts

To set up the proper environment on Solaris or Linux hosts, do the following:

1. If one is not already running, start an FTP server on your host. (Solaris hosts typically have an FTP server running by default.) Or, be sure to allow RSH connections from your target board.
2. Make sure that the **DISPLAY** variable is set so that any spawned xterm sessions appear on the local X server.
3. On Linux hosts, be sure that the **/usr/libexec/pt_chown** script has the proper permissions. Execute the following command on your host machine (this must be executed as a system administrator):

```
# chmod 4755 /usr/libexec/pt_chown
```

Running **/usr/libexec/pt_chown** as a user should not return any errors.

4. Initialize the Wind River environment by running the **wrenv.sh** script (located in *installDir*).
5. Ensure that your **\$PATH** environment variable includes the following:
 - **/usr/sbin**
 - **/sbin**
 - **/usr/X/bin**

6. Verify that each of the following exits on the host search path using the **which** command:
 - **sh**
 - **xterm**
 - **ifconfig**
 - **expect**
 - **telnet**
 - **vxtest** (which should return *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/src/scripts/vxtest.*)

Windows Hosts

To set up the proper environment on Windows hosts, do the following:

1. Install ActiveState ActiveTcl (Wind River Tcl cannot be used to run the test suite scripts at this time). The downloadable free version of ActiveTcl is sufficient for the purposes of the BSP VTS. For more information, see <http://www.activestate.com>.



NOTE: If you install ActiveTcl in a location other than `c:\tcl`, you must create and initialize the `WIND_VXTEST_ACTIVE_TCL` environment variable to the directory where ActiveTcl is installed. This is accomplished using the System Properties settings in the control panel (**Start > Control Panel > System > Advanced**).

2. Start an FTP server on the host. You can launch an FTP server from **Start > Programs > Wind River > VxWorks > FTP Server**. Set up a user with the user name **target** and the password **vxTarget** (**Security > Users/rights**). Specify a home directory for the target user. Typically, this is set to `c:\`.
3. All test scripts should be executed from the VxWorks development shell (**Start > Programs > Wind River > VxWorks > VxWorks Development Shell**).

C.3.2 Run the BSP VTS

This section provides instructions for running the BSP validation test suite supplied by Wind River. Where applicable, instructions for customizing the test suite are included.

Running the BSP VTS requires the following steps:

Step 1: Create the Image Test Configuration (ITC) File

When you first define a test suite, you must create an ITC file using the `suiteConfig` script.



NOTE: This step is only repeated when you add or subtract test modules from the existing test suite or when you create a new test suite. It does *not* need to be repeated each time you run a test suite.

Execute the following command from a VxWorks development shell on your host:

```
% vxtest suiteConfig -suite bspvts
```

This configures the BSP VTS using the `bspvts.prm` file provided in your installation (see `installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/src/config/bspvts.prm`).

The BSP VTS contains the following test modules:

tmAuxClock.c

Auxiliary clock test.

tmCacheLib.c

Cache library enable/disable test.

tmCacheDmaMallocLib.c

Cache library memory allocate/free test.

tmIntArchLib.c

Interrupt tests.

tmModel.c

SYS_MODEL test.

tmNvRam.c

NVRAM test.

tmSysClock.c

System clock test.

tmTimeStamp.c

Timestamp test.

Step 2: Create the Board Parameter File

You must create a board parameter file for each target board you wish to test.



NOTE: This step must be performed once for each test board. It is only repeated when you modify the test board settings or when a new test board is added. It does *not* need to be repeated each time you run a test suite.

Choose one of the following methods for creating a board parameter file:

1. Create a board parameter file template using the **boardConfig** script.

- a. Execute the following command:

```
% vxtest BoardConfig -template myTestBoard
```

The resulting *myTestBoard.prm* file is placed in **\$HOME/vxtestParamFiles/boards/** (where **\$HOME** is derived from the host environment variables; **\$HOME** on Solaris and Linux, **\$HOMEDRIVE\\$HOMEPATH** on Windows).



NOTE: If you wish to create template board parameter files for more than one board, you can add multiple **-template** options to your command line. For example:

```
% vxtest boardConfig -template myTestBoard1 -template myTestBoard2 ...
```

- b. Manually edit the resulting template file (or files) to suit your target board.
2. Modify an existing *board.prm* file to suite your board.
 - a. Locate an existing *board.prm* file in **\$HOME/vxtestParamFiles/boards/** and modify it to suite your board.

Step 3: Create the Host Parameter File (optional)

This step is optional if you plan to use the current host (that is, the same host on which you are executing these scripts) with no modifications to the default values (for the default values, see [hostConfig](#), p.194) to download your VxWorks image.

If you wish to download your VxWorks image from a host other than the current host, or you wish to modify certain host parameters such as the password used for FTP transfers, you can create a *host.prm* file using **hostConfig**.

Execute a command similar to the following:

```
% vxtest hostConfig -host host -hostIp hostIp -user user -password password
```

For more information on the **hostConfig** script, see [hostConfig](#), p. 194.

Step 4: Build the VxWorks Image

Once you have configured your test suite, target hardware, and test host; you must create and build your test project using the **suiteBuild** script.

Execute the following command from a VxWorks development shell on your host:

```
% vxtest suiteBuild -v -suite bspvts -bspToolBoard bsp tool myTestBoard
```

where *bsp* is the name of the BSP you wish to test (the BSP name must match the directory name in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/*), *tool* is the name of the toolchain you want to use in the build (for example, **sfdiab** for the Wind River Compiler using software floating-point), and *board* is the name of your target board. For more information on supported *bsp* and *tool* combinations, see the *VxWorks Architecture Supplement*.



NOTE: If you wish to test more than one BSP, toolchain, and board combination using a single test suite, you can build for multiple combinations by adding multiple **-bspToolBoard** options to your command line. For example:

```
% vxtest suiteBuild -v -suite bspvts -bspToolBoard pcPentium diab  
myTestBoard -bspToolBoard bcm1250_cpu0_mips64 gnu myTestBoard2
```

This command builds the required test modules and creates an image with the components and test modules specified in the ITC file (see [Step 1: Create the Image Test Configuration \(ITC\) File](#), p.202). The script also creates a test project in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/\$USER/proj/bspvts/bsp.tool.board.profile1*.

If a build failure occurs, see the detailed log files provided in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/vxtest/\$USER/logs/bspvts/default* for more information.

Step 5: Run the Test Suite

Before running the test suite, be sure the target is powered on and bootable. Also be sure that there are no console windows open to the target (the test scripts require use of the target console).

Execute the following command from a VxWorks development shell on your host:

```
% vxtest suiteRun -suite bspvts -bspToolBoard bsp tool board
```

where *bsp* is the BSP name (this is the name of the BSP directory in *installDir/vxworks-6.x/target/config/*), *tool* is the toolchain you wish to use for the test, and *board* is the base name for the board parameter file of the board you wish to test. You can specify multiple *bsp/tool/board* combinations using the **-bspToolBoard** option.

When all tests are complete, a summary of the test results is printed on the terminal.

For more information on the **suiteRun** script, including information on optional parameters, see [suiteRun](#), p.196.

Step 6: Summarize the Test Results

The final step in the BSP validation process is to summarize the test results.

To get a summary of the BSP VTS test results, execute the following command:

```
-> vxtest suiteResults -suite bspvts -v
```

This command prints out the summary of the test results for the latest test run. It also prints a list of any failed tests (-v option).

C.3.3 Troubleshooting the Test Framework

The following tips for addressing common test framework failures may be useful when working with the BSP VTS test framework:

- Error: **pt_chown: needs to be installed setuid 'root'**

This error means that the `/usr/libexec/pt_chown` script needs different permissions. A system administrator should execute the following command on the host machine:

```
# chmod 4755 /usr/libexec/pt_chown
```

If the script permissions are set properly, running `/usr/libexec/pt_chown` should not return any errors.

- Cannot open an X11 xterm on **'host':0**

Be sure that the **DISPLAY** variable is set correctly. Issue an `xhost` command on the machine that is running the X server and give permission to the test host (an `xhost +` command gives permission to all). If the error persists, you can execute the **suiteRun** script using the **-nographical** option.

- The target fails to boot and the following strings are found in the log file:

```
host name : myverylonghostname.m  
file name : ycompany.com:/dir/
```

The **HOSTNAME** environment variable is too long for the boot line. (The maximum length for the boot line is 19 characters.) Redefine **HOSTNAME** to be **hostname -s** (on Linux hosts) or set it manually.

Index

Symbols

\$HOME 193
\$HOMEDRIVE 193
\$HOMEPATH 193
_romInit() 10
_sysInit() 10, 26

A

adding
 Ethernet devices 107
 other timers 79
 VxBus devices 106
ambaTimer.c 117
apigen tool 186
architecture considerations 16
avoiding common problems 53

B

BOARD 42
board initialization 60
board support package
 see BSP

board.jpg 28
board.prm 192
boardConfig 193
boards
 see target hardware
boot image 12
boot ROMs 83
boot sequence 10–22
 configurations 12
 overview 10
 step-by-step 17
BOOT_LINE_ADRS 33
BOOTINIT 23
bootInit.c 30
 BOOTINIT 23
 romStart() 30, 66
bootLineCrack() 33
bootrom 15
bootrom_res 15
bootrom_res_high 15
bootrom_uncmp 15
breakpoints
 debugging 138
 initial breakpoint in downloaded images 140
 initial breakpoint in flash 140
 software 139

BSP

- adding support for VxBus devices 106
- architecture considerations 16
- common problems 53
- components 22–46
- configuration options 55
- custom device drivers 28
- debugging 47
- description 2
- development environment 46
- development process 3
 - time required 4
- documentation 28, 31, 105
- drivers 55
- files
 - board.jpg 28
 - bootInit.c 30
 - bspname.h 25
 - config.h 25
 - configAll.h 29
 - Makefile 25
 - README 24
 - romInit.s 26
 - sysALib.s 26
 - sysDev.c 28
 - VxBus 28
 - sysLb.c 27
 - target.nr 28
 - target.ref 28
 - usrConfig.c 30
- finalizing 78
- getting a minimal kernel running 60
- hardware considerations 45
- legacy bus support 84
- macros 42
 - BSP_REV 43
 - BSP_VER_1_2 43
 - BSP_VERSION 43
 - LOCAL_MEM_SIZE 44
 - RAM_HIGH_ADRS 43
- optional routines 45
- reference entries, writing 150
- required macros 42
- routines 35
 - optional 45

- required routines 35
- sysBspRev() 36
- sysClkConnect() 36
- sysClkDisable() 36
- sysClkEnable() 36
- sysClkInt() 36
- sysClkRateGet() 36
- sysClkRateSet() 36
- sysHwInit() 39
- sysHwInit2() 39
- sysMemTop() 37
- sysModel() 38
- sysNvRamGet() 39
- sysNvRamSet() 39
- sysSerialChanGet() 40
- sysSerialHwInit() 39
- sysSerialHwInit2() 39
- sysToMonitor() 40

support

- for optional devices 106
- for VxBus 84
- time required for development 4
- validating 199
- validation test suite 189
 - available test modules 202
 - building the VxWorks image 204
 - creating an image test configuration file 202
 - creating the board parameter file 203
 - creating the host parameter file 203
 - directory structure 190
 - log files 199
 - running 201, 204
 - setting the host environment 200
 - test files and scripts 190
 - test framework 190
 - test results 205
 - troubleshooting 205

BSP VTS

see BSP, validation test suite

- BSP_REV 43
- BSP_VER_1_1 43
- BSP_VER_1_2 43
- BSP_VERSION 43
- bspname.h 23, 25

building a VxWorks image 74

bus support

 legacy bus interface 84

 PCI 85, 104

 USB 105

 VxBus 84

C

cache

 common problems 146

 enabling 81

 timing issues 147

cacheLibInit() 81

callbackInstall() 113

common problems

 cache 146

 conflicts between virtual and physical
 memory 148

 debug tools 145

 exception handling 145

 MMU 146

 reusing code 147

 volatile variables 147

compiler

 choosing 51

config.h 25

 BSP_REV 43

 BSP_VER_1_2 43

 BSP_VERSION 43

 LOCAL_MEM_SIZE 44

 macros 42

 RAM_HIGH_ADRS 43

configAll.h 29, 34

CPU

 macro 42

CPU_VARIANT 42

creating

 additional diagnostic routines 67

 an image test configuration file 202

D

data address in virtual memory environments 121

data coherency problems 121

data variables

 required 31

DATASEGPAD 23

dataSegPad.c 23

debugging 47

 advanced techniques 138

 basic techniques 128

 breakpoints 138

 forever loop 141

 ICE 49

 initialization code 61

 interrupts 71

 logic analyzer 49

 on-chip debugging (OCD) 48

 oscilloscope 49

 ROM emulator 48

 ROM monitor 48

 ROM-based image initialization code 66

 system-mode debugging techniques 73

 tools 145

 using LEDs 47, 129

 using NVRAM 47

 VxBus device drivers 107

 WDB agent 50

 with LEDs 134

derived files

 target.ref and target.nr 31

 VxWorks images 30

development environment

 common problems 144

 introduction 46

device drivers

 custom drivers in the BSP 28

 debugging VxBus drivers 107

 generic 110

 interrupt controller 75

 legacy model 28

 registration with VxBus 65

 sysDev.c 28

 VxBus initialization sequence 64

diagnostic routines 67
direct memory access (DMA)
 see DMA
DMA 75, 121
document terminology 4
documentation 28
 guidelines 150
 make man 28, 31
 target.nr 28
 target.ref 31
documenting your BSP 28
download path 52
downloading images 52, 74

E

enabling
 cache 81
 MMU 81
 NVRAM 80
endian configurations 17
environment variables
 \$HOME 193
 \$HOMEDRIVE 193
 \$HOMEPATH 193
Ethernet devices
 adding 107
 MAC address 109
EXC_MSG_ADRS 34
executing
 as a task 21
 kernelInit() 21
 romInit() 17
 romStart() 18
 sysInit() 18
 usrInit() 18
 usrRoot() 21

F

fast back-to-back transmissions
 see FBB transmissions

FBB transmissions 88
files
 board.prm 192
 bootInit.c 30
 BSP validation 190
 bspname.h 25
 config.h 25
 configAll.h 29
 hex 74, 130
 host.prm 193
 hwconf.c 29
 Makefile 25
 README 24
 romInit.s 26
 S-record 74
 suite.prm 190
 sysALib.s 26
 sysDev.c 28
 sysLib.c 27, 29
 target.nr 28
 target.ref 28
 usrConfig.c 30, 34
 vmLib.h 33
finalizing your BSP 78
finding
 addresses in the flash image 130
 code block addresses 130
 symbol addresses 129
forever loop 141

H

hardWareInterFaceInit() 77
hcfDeviceNum 32, 34
header files
 bspname.h 25
 config.h 25
 configAll.h 29
 vmLib.h 33
HEX_FLAGS 43
host.prm 193
hostConfig 194
hwconf.c
 VxBus 29

I

- ICE 49
- image test configuration file 192, 202
- image types
 - bootrom 15
 - bootrom_res 15
 - bootrom_res_high 15
 - bootrom_uncmp 15
 - vxWorks 14
 - vxWorks.res_rom 14
 - vxWorks.res_rom_nosym 15
 - vxWorks.res_rom_nosym_res_low 15
 - vxWorks.res_rom_res_low 15
 - vxWorks.st 14
 - vxWorks.st_rom 14
 - vxWorks.sym 14
 - vxWorks_rom 14
- in-circuit emulator
 - see* ICE
- include files 23
- INCLUDE_MMU_FULL 81
- initialization
 - generic 69
 - RAM 69
 - VxBus routines 77
- initialization code
 - debugging 61
- initialization sequence
 - VxBus 64
- interrupt controllers 75
- interrupts, finding the source of 71
- ioctl() 113
- ITC
 - see* image test configuration file

J

- JTAG 48

K

- kernel 60
- kernellnit()
 - during development 71
 - executing 21

L

- latency timer 88
- LEDs 134
 - debugging with 47
 - diagnostic tool 129
- LOCAL_MEM_AUTOSIZE 44
- LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS 44, 53
- LOCAL_MEM_SIZE 44
- log files
 - BSP validation test suite 199
- logic analyzer 49

M

- m8260Timer.c 117
- MACH_EXTRA 43
- macros 42
 - BOARD 42
 - BOOTINIT 23
 - BSP_REV 43
 - BSP_VER_1_1 43
 - BSP_VER_1_2 43
 - BSP_VERSION 43
 - CPU 42
 - CPU_VARIANT 42
 - DATASEGPAD 23
 - HEX_FLAGS 43
 - LOCAL_MEM_AUTOSIZE 44
 - LOCAL_MEM_LOCAL_ADRS 44
 - LOCAL_MEM_SIZE 44
 - MACH_EXTRA 43
 - NUM_TTY 44
 - RAM_HIGH_ADRS 43
 - RAM_LOW_ADRS 43

- ROM_BASE_ADRS 44
- ROM_LINK_ADRS 42
- ROM_SIZE 43
- ROM_TEXT_ADRS 42
- ROM_WARM_ADRS 43, 44
- TARGET_DIR 42
- TGT_DIR 42
- TOOL 42
- USER_RESERVED_MEM 44
- VENDOR 42
- VMA_START 44
- make man 28, 31
- Makefile 25
 - macros 42
 - RAM_HIGH_ADRS 43
- memory initialization 61
- mg2ref script (converting target.nr) 184
- MMU 121
 - common problems 146
 - enabling 81
- multifunction devices 120
- multi-mode serial drivers 111

N

- NetROM 52, 74
- non-maskable interrupts (NMI) 56, 73
- non-volatile memory
 - see* non-volatile RAM
- non-volatile RAM 118
 - debugging with 47
 - enabling 80
- NUM_TTY 44
- NVRAM
 - see* non-volatile RAM
- nvRamToFlash.c
 - sysFlashGet() 81
 - sysFlashSet() 81

O

- objdump 129
- OCD 48, 138
- on-chip debugging (OCD)
 - see* OCD
- one-shot timer
 - examples 117
 - implementation 115
- optional devices
 - support for 106
 - troubleshooting and debugging 121
- OS image 12
- outConsole() 67

P

- PCI
 - autoconfiguration 85
 - automatic interrupt binding 90
 - base addressing 91
 - 16-bit I/O space 93
 - 32-bit I/O space 92
 - 32-bit memory space, non-prefetchable 91
 - 32-bit memory space, prefetchable 91
 - bus support 85
 - cache line size 90
 - configuration example 96
 - custom bridge initialization 93
 - delay before initialization 94
 - error messages 89
 - FBB transmissions
 - latency timer 88
 - optional routines 95
 - roll call routine 94
 - show routines 102
- PCI Bus Specification 2.1 85
- PCI_AUTO_INT_ROUTE_GET 91
- PCI_AUTO_INT_ROUTE_SET 91
- PCI_BRIDGE_POST_CONFIG_FUNC_SET 94
- PCI_BRIDGE_PRE_CONFIG_FUNC_SET 93
- PCI_CACHE_SIZE_GET 90
- PCI_CACHE_SIZE_SET 90
- PCI_INCLUDE_FUNC_SET 95

- PCI_INT_ASSIGN_FUNC_SET 96
 - PCI_IO16_LOC_SET 93
 - PCI_IO16_SIZE_GET 93
 - PCI_IO16_SIZE_SET 93
 - PCI_IO32_LOC_SET 92
 - PCI_IO32_SIZE_GET 92
 - PCI_IO32_SIZE_SET 92
 - PCI_MAX_LATENCY_FUNC_SET 89
 - PCI_MEM32_LOC_SET 91
 - PCI_MEM32_SIZE_GET 91
 - PCI_MEM32_SIZE_SET 91
 - PCI_MEMIO32_LOC_SET 92
 - PCI_MEMIO32_SIZE_GET 92
 - PCI_MEMIO32_SIZE_SET 92
 - pciAutoCfg.c 85
 - pciConfigShow.c 85
 - pciConfigTopoShow() 102
 - pciDeviceShow() 103
 - pciHeaderShow() 103
 - pciIntLib.c 85
 - PHYS_MEM_DESC 32
 - pollInput() 114
 - pollOutput() 114
 - position-independent code (PIC) 145
 - post-processed compiler output 135
 - power management 115
 - printf() 47, 68
- Q**
- quiescent state 3, 70
- R**
- RAM initialization 69
 - RAM_HIGH_ADRS 43
 - RAM_LOW_ADRS 43
 - README 24
 - real-time processes (RTPs) 148
 - reference entries 150
 - filename extensions 185
 - generating 185
 - processing 187
 - target.ref 166
 - tools 186
 - written style 150
 - refgen tool 186
 - required macros 42
 - see also macros, BSP macros
 - required routines 35
 - see also routines
 - reusing code 147
 - ROM emulator 48
 - ROM monitor 48
 - ROM_BASE_ADRS 44
 - ROM_LINK_ADRS 42
 - ROM_SIZE 43
 - ROM_TEXT_ADRS 42
 - ROM_WARM_ADRS 43, 44
 - ROM-based image type initialization 66
 - romInit() 8, 17, 26, 66
 - executing 17
 - romInit.s 26, 54
 - romInit() 26, 66
 - romStart() 18, 30, 66
 - routines 35
 - bootLineCrack() 33
 - diagnostic 67
 - hardWareInterFaceInit() 77
 - optional 45
 - romInit() 8
 - sysBspRev() 36
 - sysClkConnect() 36
 - sysClkDisable() 36
 - sysClkEnable() 36
 - sysClkInt() 36
 - sysClkRateGet() 36
 - sysClkRateSet() 36
 - sysHwInit() 8, 39, 65
 - sysHwInit2() 8, 21, 39, 65
 - sysMemTop() 37
 - sysModel() 38
 - sysNvRamGet() 39
 - sysNvRamSet() 39
 - sysOneShotDisable() 116
 - sysOneShotEnable() 116
 - sysOneShotInit() 116

- sysSerialChanGet() 40
- sysSerialHwInit() 39
- sysSerialHwInit2() 39
- sysToMonitor() 40
- timer driver 36
- usrRoot() 65
- vxbDeviceConnect() 78
- vxbDeviceInit() 77
- vxbInit() 77
- VxBus initialization 77
- running
 - BSP validation test suite 201

S

- scaling RAM size 119
- scripts
 - boardConfig 193
 - BSP validation test 190
 - hostConfig 194
 - suiteBuild 195
 - suiteConfig 190
 - suiteResults 198
 - suiteRun 196
- SCSI
 - cables and termination 121
 - SCSI-2 devices 120
- serial drivers 76, 114
- setting hardware to a quiescent state 70
- SIO drivers 111
 - see serial drivers
- SIO_CHAN 35
- source files 23
- S-record files 74
- structures
 - PHYS_MEM_DESC 32
- suite.prm 190
- suiteBuild 195
- suiteConfig 190
- suiteResults 198
- suiteRun 196
- support for DMA driver model 75
- sysALib.s 26, 54
 - _sysInit() 26

- sysAtaInit() 109
- sysBatDesc[] 119
- sysBootLine 31, 33
- sysBspRev() 35, 36
- sysCache.c 82
- sysCacheLock() 82
- sysCacheLockLib.c 82
 - sysCacheLock() 82
 - sysCacheUnlock() 82
 - sysL2CacheLock() 82
 - sysL2CacheUnlock() 82
- sysCacheUnlock() 82
- sysClkConnect() 35, 36
- sysClkDisable() 35, 36
- sysClkEnable() 35, 36
- sysClkInt() 35, 36
- sysClkRateGet() 35, 36
- sysClkRateSet() 35, 36
- sysDev.c 28
 - device drivers 28
 - VxBus 28
- sysExcMsg 31, 34
- sysFlags 31, 34
- sysFlashGet() 81
- sysFlashSet() 81
- sysHwInit() 8, 35, 39, 70
 - VxBus 65
- sysHwInit2() 8, 21, 35, 39
 - VxBus 65
- sysIbcInit() 109
- sysInit() 18
- sysL2CacheInit() 109
- sysL2CacheLock() 82
- sysL2CacheUnlock() 82
- sysLib.c 27, 29, 70
- sysMemTop() 35, 37, 119
- sysModel() 35, 38
- sysNvRamGet() 35, 39, 81, 118
- sysNvRamSet() 35, 39, 81, 118
- sysOneShotDisable() 116
- sysOneShotEnable() 116
- sysOneShotInit() 116
- sysPciAutoConfig() 85
- sysPciAutoconfigInclude() 85
- sysPciAutoConfigIntAssign() 85

sysPciAutoconfigIntrAssign() 85
 sysPciAutoconfigPostEnumBridgeInit() 86
 sysPciAutoconfigPreEnumBridgeInit() 85
 sysPciConfig() 85
 sysPciHostBridgeInit() 85
 sysPciInByte() 86
 sysPciInLong() 86
 sysPciInWord() 86
 sysPciOutByte() 86
 sysPciOutLong() 86
 sysPciOutWord() 86
 sysPciRead16() 87
 sysPciRead32() 87
 sysPciRollCallRtn() 86
 sysPciWrite16() 87
 sysPciWrite32() 87
 sysPhysMemDescNumEnt 31, 33
 sysPhysMemTop() 38
 sysScsiInit() 109
 sysSerialChanGet() 35, 40
 sysSerialHwInit() 35, 39
 sysSerialHwInit2() 35, 39
 system-mode debugging techniques 73
 sysTffsInit() 109
 sysToMonitor() 35, 40

T

target hardware 45
 target.nr 28, 105
 running the mg2ref script 184
 target.ref 28, 105, 166
 TARGET_DIR 42
 terminology 4
 test modules
 tmAuxClock.c 202
 tmCacheDmaMallocLib.c 202
 tmCacheLib.c 202
 tmIntArchLib.c 202
 tmModel.c 202
 tmNvRam.c 202
 tmSysClock.c 202
 tmTimeStamp.c 202
 TGT_DIR 42

timer drivers 36
 timers 115
 auxiliary clock driver 79
 timestamp driver 79
 tmAuxClock.c 202
 tmCacheDmaMallocLib.c 202
 tmCacheLib.c 202
 tmIntArchLib.c 202
 tmModel.c 202
 tmNvRam.c 202
 tmSysClock.c 202
 tmTimeStamp.c 202
 TOOL 42
 tools
 debugging 145
 txStartup() 113

U

USB bus interface 105
 USER_D_CACHE_MODE 81
 USER_I_CACHE_MODE 81
 USER_RESERVED_MEM 44
 usrConfig.c 30, 34
 usrInit() 30, 70
 usrRoot() 30, 71
 usrInit() 18, 30, 70
 executing 18
 usrMmuInit() 81
 usrRoot() 21, 30, 71
 VxBus 65

V

validating a BSP 189, 199
 VENDOR 42
 verifying OS components in the image 136
 VMA_START 44
 VME bus interface 104
 vmLib 120
 vmLib.h 33
 vxbDeviceConnect() 78

vxbDeviceInit() 77
vxbInit() 77
VxBus
 adding devices 106
 BSP support for 84
 debugging device drivers 107
 device driver registration 65
 hwconf.c 29
 initialization routines 77
 initialization sequence 64
 sysDev.c 28
VxWorks
 image types 30
 bootrom 15
 bootrom_res 15
 bootrom_res_high 15
 bootrom_uncmp 15
 vxWorks 14
 vxWorks.res_rom 14
 vxWorks.res_rom_nosym 15
 vxWorks.res_rom_nosym_res_low 15
 vxWorks.res_rom_res_low 15
 vxWorks.st 14
 vxWorks.st_rom 14
 vxWorks.sym 14
 vxWorks_rom 14
vxWorks 14
VxWorks bus analyzer 50
vxWorks.res_rom 14
vxWorks.res_rom_nosym 15
vxWorks.res_rom_nosym_res_low 15
vxWorks.res_rom_res_low 15
vxWorks.st 14
vxWorks.st_rom 14
vxWorks.sym 14
vxWorks_rom 14

W

WDB agent
 debugging with 50
 starting the WDB agent before the kernel 72
Workbench 51
writing initialization code 54